

ESOL ADVANCED GRAMMAR



Allyson Marceau
San Jacinto College

ESOL Advanced Grammar

This text is disseminated via the Open Education Resource (OER) LibreTexts Project (<https://LibreTexts.org>) and like the thousands of other texts available within this powerful platform, it is freely available for reading, printing, and "consuming."

The LibreTexts mission is to bring together students, faculty, and scholars in a collaborative effort to provide an accessible, and comprehensive platform that empowers our community to develop, curate, adapt, and adopt openly licensed resources and technologies; through these efforts we can reduce the financial burden born from traditional educational resource costs, ensuring education is more accessible for students and communities worldwide.

Most, but not all, pages in the library have licenses that may allow individuals to make changes, save, and print this book. Carefully consult the applicable license(s) before pursuing such effects. Instructors can adopt existing LibreTexts texts or Remix them to quickly build course-specific resources to meet the needs of their students. Unlike traditional textbooks, LibreTexts' web based origins allow powerful integration of advanced features and new technologies to support learning.



LibreTexts is the adaptable, user-friendly non-profit open education resource platform that educators trust for creating, customizing, and sharing accessible, interactive textbooks, adaptive homework, and ancillary materials. We collaborate with individuals and organizations to champion open education initiatives, support institutional publishing programs, drive curriculum development projects, and more.

The LibreTexts libraries are Powered by [NICE CXone Expert](#) and was supported by the Department of Education Open Textbook Pilot Project, the California Education Learning Lab, the UC Davis Office of the Provost, the UC Davis Library, the California State University Affordable Learning Solutions Program, and Merlot. This material is based upon work supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant No. 1246120, 1525057, and 1413739.

Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation nor the US Department of Education.

Have questions or comments? For information about adoptions or adaptations contact info@LibreTexts.org or visit our main website at <https://LibreTexts.org>.

This text was compiled on 12/31/2025

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Licensing

1: Present Past and Future Tenses

- 1.1: The Present
 - 1.1.1: Practice with Present Tenses
 - 1.1.2: Subject-Verb Agreement
- 1.2: Simple Past and Past Progressive-Usage and Practice
- 1.3: Practice with Simple Past and Past Progressive
- 1.4: The Future
 - 1.4.1: Practice with Future Time

2: Perfect Tenses

- 2.1: Present Perfect Tense
- 2.2: Present Perfect Tense with Time Expressions
- 2.3: Simple Past vs Present Perfect
- 2.4: Present Perfect Progressive
- 2.5: Past Perfect
- 2.6: Past Perfect Progressive (Continuous) Tense
- 2.7: Past Perfect vs Past Perfect Progressive

3: Modals

- 3.1: Modal Verbs Expressing Degrees of Certainty
- 3.2: Past Modals of Degrees of Certainty
- 3.3: Should Have
- 3.4: Comparing Could Have and Should Have
- 3.5: Progressive Modals

4: Passive

- 4.1: Passive-Form and Usage
 - 4.1.1: Practice with Passive
 - 4.1.2: Passive Voice Exercises-Variety Tenses
 - 4.1.3: Passive Exercises- Modal Verbs

5: Connectors- Adverbials, Adverb Clauses and Phrases

- 5.1: Introduction to Phrases and Clauses
 - 5.1.1: Clause Joining and Punctuation
 - 5.1.2: Working with Language- Complex Sentences
- 5.2: Comparison and Contrast
- 5.3: Connectors of Purpose Reason and Result
- 5.4: Connectors-Addition
 - 5.4.1: Practice-Addition

6: Real and Unreal Conditional

- 6.1: Chapter 6- Conditional/Hypothetical
 - 6.1.1: Present Unreal (Second) Conditional
 - 6.1.1.1: The "Be" Verb in Present Unreal Conditional
 - 6.1.2: More Practice with Present Unreal (Second) Conditional
 - 6.1.3: Past Unreal (Third) Conditional
 - 6.1.4: Practice with Past Unreal (Third) Conditional
 - 6.1.5: Mixed Conditionals
 - 6.1.6: Conditionals-Review

7: Adjective Clauses

- 7.1: Introduction to Adjective Clauses/Defining and Non-Defining Adjective Clauses
- 7.2: Subject and Object Relative (Adjective) Clauses
- 7.3: Reducing Adjective Clauses
- 7.4: Adjective Clauses with Whose
- 7.5: Common Errors with Adjective Clauses
- 7.6: Adjective Clauses with When and Where
- 7.7: Practice with When and Where Adjective Clauses

8: Noun Clauses

- 8.1: Introduction to Noun Clauses
- 8.2: 7.2-Practice with "That" Noun Clauses
- 8.3: Embedded Questions-Wh-Clauses
- 8.4: Reported Yes/No Questions with If and Whether
 - 8.4.1: Practice with Reported Yes/No Questions
- 8.5: Direct and Indirect Speech

9: Gerunds and Infinitives

- 9.1: Introduction to-Gerunds and Infinitives- Reading
- 9.2: Gerunds Introduced
- 9.3: Gerunds Practice
 - 9.3.1: Gerund as Subject
 - 9.3.2: Gerunds - Questions
 - 9.3.3: Verb + Gerund
 - 9.3.4: Adjective+Preposition+Gerund
 - 9.3.5: Gerunds - Find Someone Who - Questions
 - 9.3.6: Gerunds in Go Expressions
 - 9.3.7: Gerunds - Review
- 9.4: Gerund Rules - Review
- 9.5: Gerunds-Form and Usage
- 9.6: Infinitives-Form and Usage
 - 9.6.1: Infinitives After Objects or Object Pronouns
 - 9.6.2: Infinitives To Show Purpose
- 9.7: Infinitives Practice-"It is.."
 - 9.7.1: Infinitives Review
 - 9.7.2: Infinitives – Writing

- [9.7.3: Infinitives – More Questions](#)
- [9.8: Practice-Gerunds and Infinitives](#)
 - [9.8.1: Gerunds + Infinitives Review](#)
 - [9.8.2: Gerunds + Infinitives Exercises](#)
 - [9.8.3: Gerunds and Infinitives - Speaking Practice](#)
 - [9.8.4: Wedding Interview and Writing](#)
 - [9.8.5: Error Correction](#)
 - [9.8.6: Writing Practices-Write a Letter](#)

10: Appendices

- [10.1: 100 Common Irregular Verbs](#)
- [10.2: Common Verbs Followed by Gerunds](#)
- [10.3: Common Verbs Followed by Infinitives](#)
- [10.4: List of Common Verb + Prep + Gerund Combinations](#)
- [10.5: Spelling-Adding -s or -es \(Plural Nouns and Simple Present Tense\)](#)
- [10.6: Spelling Rules for Adding -ing and -ed](#)

[Index](#)

[Glossary](#)

[Detailed Licensing](#)

[Detailed Licensing](#)

Licensing

A detailed breakdown of this resource's licensing can be found in [Back Matter/Detailed Licensing](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

1: Present Past and Future Tenses

1.1: The Present

1.1.1: Practice with Present Tenses

1.1.2: Subject-Verb Agreement

1.2: Simple Past and Past Progressive-Usage and Practice

1.3: Practice with Simple Past and Past Progressive

1.4: The Future

1.4.1: Practice with Future Time

This page titled [1: Present Past and Future Tenses](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

1.1: The Present

Simple Present and Present Progressive Tenses Introduced

Simple Present (Present Simple)

Using The Simple Present

The Simple Present is used to:

- Talk about habits and routines
- Permanent situations
- Facts
- States of Being or Existence (non-action)

--> For many sentences at least one, but often **multiple** of the above can apply to the sentence. Something might be a regular event, but it can also be a *fact*. Or, something is a *habit* that occurs *regularly*. There might be more than one reason to use the Simple Present.

Simple Present : Form

Affirmative	Negative	Questions
I eat breakfast at 8 am.	I don't eat breakfast at 8, but at 7 am.	(When) Do you eat breakfast at 7 am or 8 am?
Jimmy likes fishing.	Jimmy doesn't like fishing.	(Why) Does Jimmy like fishing?
The train stops at platform 9 3/4.	The train doesn't stop at platform 9 3/4	Does the train stop at platform 9 3/4?
They arrive at the gate in ten minutes.	They don't arrive at the gate in ten minutes.	Do they arrive at the gate in ten minutes?

The Simple Present in a few examples:

1. I **cook** dinner every Friday.

As you can see, this happens regularly, namely every Friday. Since the subject is 'I', there's no need to add an 's' to the verb.

2. She **eats** turkey every year on Christmas Eve.

This is a habit/tradition, which repeats itself every year (so, you could also say it's a regular event). Since the subject is 'she', we follow the 'shit-rule' and add an 's' to the verb.

3. The bus **leaves** every ten minutes.

It's scheduled, therefore regular. It's also a fact; not an opinion. Since the subject of this sentence is 'it', we follow the 'shit-rule' and add an 's' to the verb.

4. Sheila and her mom often **collect** money for a good cause.

This is a habit of two people, they think it's important to collect money. It also happens regularly. Since the subject of this sentence is 'they', there's no need to add an 's' to the verb.

Stative Verbs-States of Being or Existence (non-actions)

Simple Present is also used to describe states of being or existence (non-actions)

States of being or existence:

- are conditions or situations that exist
- are inactive states; no action is performed
- are not usually progressive
- express (1) **equivalence or existence ("be")**, (2) **sensory states**, (3) **cognitive (thinking) states**, (4) **possession states**, (5) **emotional states**, (6) **measurements**.

Example Paragraph:

My name is Albert. I **am** a sleepwalker. I **know** the condition **seems** very unusual. As you can **guess**, I never **know** where I will wake up in the morning. I **am** tired much of the time. I **have** medicine to keep me from sleepwalking, but it **doesn't work** well. My footsteps in the middle of the night **surprise** people. My nights **include** a lot of unexpected adventures.

Present Progressive (Present Continuous)

The Present Progressive is used to:

- Talk about something that is going on at the moment of speaking (now!).
- Talk about something happening around the present time (The "bigger" now)
- Express temporary situations
- Express ongoing changes
- Express irritations (Usually with "always" or "constantly")

Forms of the Present Progressive

Affirmative	Negative	Question
I am eating breakfast at the moment.	I am not eating breakfast at the moment.	(When) am I eating breakfast?
You are playing basketball this season.	You are not playing basketball this season.	(Why) are you playing basketball this season?
Jim is fishing today.	Jim is not fishing today.	(Where) is Jim fishing today?
We are getting closer to our goal every day.	We are not getting closer to our goal.	Are we getting closer to our goal?
They are walking to school now.	They aren't walking to school now.	(Why) Are they walking to school?

The Present Progressive in a few examples:

Shh! I**m reading** a book, I can't concentrate when you're making so much noise!

- you can tell it's happening at the moment of speaking since the speaker asks the other one to be quiet.

I**m staying** at the Holiday Inn for a few days.

- temporary situation, he/she's on vacation.

Maria **is taking** three classes this semester.

- happening around the present time
- often with "this"

The climate **is getting** warmer.

- An ongoing change

His mother **is always nagging** about homework.

- an irritation, the mom 'nags' regularly

Irritations are often expressed using the words 'always', 'forever', 'constantly'

Stative Verbs-Exceptions-When Stative Verbs Can Have Active Meanings

Some stative verbs can take active forms. In these cases, progressive verb forms are sometimes used.

Be

be is usually a stative verb, but when it is used in the progressive form, it means 'behaving' or 'acting'

Stative meaning= it's part of a personality or characteristic-- Larry is a very nice person.

Active meaning= a temporary behavior--He is not being very nice today. He is angry.

Think

think is usually a stative verb, but it can also indicate active consideration of ideas, people or things

Stative meaning= have an opinion-- I think that grammar is difficult.

Active meaning= consider--I'm thinking of going on vacation. She's thinking about her family.

Have

have is usually a stative verb indicating ownership , but it also has specific active meanings

Stative meaning= own--I have two cats and a dog.

Active meanings:

eat- We're having dinner.

experience: I'm having a bad day. We're having fun.

arrange or host: Jill is having a party on Saturday. We're having people over for dinner tonight.

See

see is usually a stative verb about using your sense of sight or understanding, but it also has active meanings:

Stative meaning=see with your eyes / understand

I see her now, she's just coming along the road.

I see what you mean

Active meanings:

date: I'm seeing a man I met at the college.

meet: I'm seeing Robert tomorrow. I'm seeing a specialist for my headaches.

Taste

taste has both a stative and an active meaning related to the senses

Stative meaning= has a certain taste

This soup tastes salty.

Active meaning= the action of tasting

Laura is tasting the soup to see if it needs more salt.

Page by [Wiki Wijs](#) is licensed for use under [CC BY 4.0](#)

States of "being" from [Grammar Quizzes](#) by [Julie Sevastopoulos](#) is licensed for use under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#)

This page titled [1.1: The Present](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

1.1.1: Practice with Present Tenses

Exercise 1.1.1-Identify the Uses of Present Tenses

Determine why the simple present is used in each example. Write the letter of the rule in the blank.

a. *fact or permanent situation* b. *habit or routine* c. *state of being or condition*

1. Joel always eats breakfast in the morning. b
2. Hurricanes often cause extensive damage to a community ____
3. I believe our team is going to win the match. ____
4. My brother is always leaving his dirty dishes in the sink. ____
5. It rains a lot in Texas in the summer. ____
6. Michele works at the nail salon three days a week. ____
7. I feel sick to my stomach. ____
8. Learning a language requires a lot of practice. ____
9. My sister has three dogs and two cats. ____

Exercise 1.1.2 Choose simple present or present progressive

Is it a general truth (fact) or an observation (at the moment)?

1. The sun (rises / is rising) every morning.
2. The sun (rises / is rising) over the mountains now.
3. Look! The moon (lights up / is lighting up) the face of my watch.
4. The moon (lights up / is lighting up) the night sky when it is full.
5. I went on a long trip, and my plants (die / are dying) in my garden. I'm watering them now.
6. Plants (die / are dying) without water.
7. Children (grow / are growing) a little each year.
8. My son (grow / is growing) up so fast!

Exercise 1.1.3: Fill in the Blanks

Part 1 Directions: Gloria and Esperanza are in the library (right now). Complete the dialogue with the correct form of the verb in parentheses. Use simple present or present progressive tense. Because it's a conversation, use contractions.

- Look for signal words to help you decide the right tense.
- Put stative verbs in the simple present (not present progressive).

Esperanza: Hi, Gloria. What are you doing here?

Gloria: I _____ (look) for a book about U.S. presidents. How about you?

Esperanza: I _____ (return) a book. _____ (you/want) to go for a cup of coffee?

Gloria: Sorry, I can't right now. I _____ (wait) for my friend. Today, we _____ (work) on a project for history class together. We _____ (need) to finish

it by next week.

Esperanza: _____ (you/like) your history class?

Gloria: Yes. I really _____ (like) the teacher. She always _____ (wear) explains things so well, and she _____ (have) a lot of teaching experience.

Part 2 Directions: Take turns reading the dialogue. One person takes the role of Gloria. The other person takes the role of Esperanza. You can even give a performance of your reading to the class.

Exercise 1.1.4: Error Correction

Read each sentence and think about the verb form. There are five sentences with mistakes. If there is a mistake, correct it.

1. I want to learn English.
2. Every morning, I like to drink coffee.
3. Two days a week, I am going to the gym.
4. I am loving to exercise at the gym.
5. I want to practice English with native speakers.
6. Now, I study English and look for a job.
7. I work Monday through Friday.
8. I am study English this term.
9. I often practice English.
10. I am doing my homework every day.

Exercise 1.1.5: Fill in the Blank

Write the correct verb forms on the lines. Use either the simple present or the present progressive.

- Use signal words to help you determine the correct tense.
- Use stative verbs in the simple present (not in the present progressive).
- Don't forget that "think" can be active or stative depending on how it is used.

Right now I (1.write) _____ in my journal. It (2.snow) _____ outside. I (3.think) _____ about my family. I (4. think) _____ about my family every day. I (5. speak) _____ with my family every weekend. My mother _____ (6. send) me letters every week, but I still miss them. Oh! The phone (7. ring) _____. Maybe my father (8. call) _____. He always (9.call) _____ on Sunday.

Exercise 1.1.6: Stative or Active?

Fill in the blank with a form of simple present or present progressive.

1. My husband _____ (always / taste) the food while I'm cooking! It's very annoying.
2. Now I _____ (see) why Mary didn't like the movie. It was really boring.
3. We _____ (have) a barbeque for the Fourth of July this weekend.
4. This coffee _____ (not / taste) right.
5. What _____ (you / think) about the invention of AI?

6. She _____ (have) a difficult time with her math homework.
7. I _____ (not / see) anything. I can't work the telescope.
8. My mother _____ (taste) the sauce to see if it needs more spices.
9. A: What _____ (that boy / do)? B: He _____ (be) silly.
10. _____ (you / be) hungry? _____ (you / want) a sandwich?
11. My dog _____ (smell) the bushes. Maybe there is something interesting in there.
12. I _____ (have) fun today! My family and I are at Disney World!
13. I _____ (see) a doctor for my back pain. I _____ (have) an appointment this Tuesday.
14. Your perfume _____ (smell) beautiful! What is it?
15. A: Mai has been offered a new job. B: Is she going to take it? A: She _____ (not / know). She _____ (think) about it.

Exercise 1.1.1 and 1.1.6 Original Content by Allyson Marceau

Exercise 1.2.1 from [Grammar Quizzes](#) by [Julie Sevastopoulos](#) is licensed for use under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#)

Exercises 1.3.1, 1.4.1 and 1. 5.1 are from Explorations 1: Grammar for the Experienced Beginner by Susan Caisse, Jennifer Rueda, and Kristee Emens-Hesslink is licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#)

This page titled [1.1.1: Practice with Present Tenses](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

1.1.2: Subject-Verb Agreement

Subject-verb agreement is one of the most common errors that people make in English Grammar. Having a solid understanding of this concept is critical when making a good impression, and it will help ensure that your ideas are communicated clearly.

What Is Agreement?

Agreement in speech and in writing refers to the proper grammatical match between words and phrases. Parts of sentences must agree, or correspond with other parts, in number, person, case, and gender.

- **Number.** All parts must match in singular or plural forms.
- **Person.** All parts must match in first person (*I, we*), second person (*you*), or third person (*he, she, it, they*) forms.
- **Gender.** All parts must match in male or female forms.

Subject-verb agreement describes the proper match between subjects and verbs. Several rules about subject-verb agreement are discussed here.

Because subjects and verbs are either singular or plural, the subject of a sentence and the verb of a sentence must agree with each other in number. That is, a singular subject belongs with a singular verb form, and a plural subject belongs with a plural verb form. Notice that in the sentences below, the simple present or the present progressive tense is used. Many times, subject-verb agreement mistakes are made in this verb tense.

- **Singular:** The cat *jumps* over the fence.
- **Plural:** The cats *jump* over the fence.
- **Singular:** A student *is writing* on the whiteboard.
- **Plural:** Some students *are taking* a test..

Exercise 1.2.6

Write the correct form of the verb in parentheses depending upon whether the subject is first, second, or third person singular or plural. Use simple present or present progressive tense

1. Marisol _____ to work every day. (drive)
2. My sister and I _____ in the church choir on Sundays. (sing)
3. The children _____ in the living room this evening. (play)
4. Jose _____ this weekend, so he can't come to the barbeque. (work)
5. Joan and Shari _____ for the train to arrive. It is fifteen minutes late. (wait)
6. My grandfather is upset because you _____ on my grandfather's chair. (sit)
7. I _____ the entire house, every weekend. (clean)
8. My parents _____ a new house. They are going to sign the papers on Friday. (buy)
9. Some women from my class _____ (study) together in the library right now.

Errors in Subject-Verb Agreement



Errors in subject-verb agreement may occur when:

- a sentence contains a compound subject;
- the subject of the sentence is separate from the verb;
- the subject of the sentence is an indefinite pronoun, such as *anyone* or *everyone*;
- the subject of the sentence is a collective noun, such as *team* or *organization*; or
- the subject appears after the verb.

Recognizing the sources of common errors in subject-verb agreement will help you avoid these errors in your writing. This section covers some of the common rules of subject-verb agreement that will help you to avoid these errors.

RULE 1: Compound Subjects

A compound subject is formed by two or more nouns and the coordinating conjunctions *and*, *or*, or *nor*. A compound subject can be made of singular subjects, plural subjects, or a combination of singular and plural subjects.

Compound subjects combined with *and* take a plural verb form.

Two singular subjects: Alicia and Miguel *ride* their bikes to the beach.

Two plural subjects: The girls and the boys *ride* their bikes to the beach.

Singular and plural subjects: Alicia and the boys *ride* their bikes to the beach.

Compound subjects combined with *or* and *nor* are treated separately. The verb must agree with the subject that is nearest to the verb.

Two singular subjects: Either you or Jason *takes* the furniture out of the garage.

Two plural subjects: Either you or the twins *take* the furniture out of the garage.

Singular and plural subjects: Either Jason or the twins *take* the furniture out of the garage.

Plural and singular subjects: Either the twins or Jason *takes* the furniture out of the garage.

Two singular subjects: Neither Elizabeth nor Rianna *wants* to eat at that restaurant.

Two plural subjects: Neither the kids nor the adults *want* to eat at that restaurant.

Singular and plural subjects: Neither Elizabeth nor the kids *want* to eat at that restaurant.

Plural and singular subjects: Neither the kids nor Elizabeth *wants* to eat at that restaurant.

Tip

If you can substitute the word *they* for the compound subject, then the sentence takes the third person plural verb form.

RULE 2: Separation of Subjects and Verbs

As you read or write, you may come across a sentence that contains a phrase or clause that separates the subject from the verb. Often, prepositional phrases or dependent clauses add more information to the sentence and appear between the subject and the verb. However, the subject and the verb must still agree.

If you have trouble finding the subject and verb, cross out or ignore the phrases and clauses that begin with prepositions or dependent words. The subject of a sentence will never be in a prepositional phrase or dependent clause.

The following are examples of subjects and verbs separated by a prepositional phrase:

The student with the best grades *wins* the academic awards.*

The puppy under the table *is* my favorite.

*Notice that the noun before the verb is plural, but because that word, "grades," is the object of the preposition, not the subject in the sentence. So the verb "wins" does not need to agree with "grades," it needs to agree with "student."

The following are examples of subjects and verbs separated by a dependent clause:

The car that I bought *has* power steering and a sunroof.

The representatives who are courteous *sell* the most tickets.

RULE 3: Indefinite Pronouns

Indefinite pronouns refer to an unspecified person, thing, or number. When an indefinite pronoun serves as the subject of a sentence, you will usually use a singular verb form.

Table 12.13.3 -- Indefinite Pronoun Agreement

Indefinite Pronouns	Examples
anybody, anyone, anything	Does anyone have an extra pencil?
everybody, everyone, everything	Everybody needs someone to love.
nobody, no one, nothing	No one has the remote. Where can it be?
somebody, someone, something	Somebody is making noise in the apartment next to us.

RULE 4: Collective Nouns

A collective noun is a noun that identifies more than one person, place, or thing and considers those people, places, or things to be a singular (one) unit. Because collective nouns are counted as one, they are singular and require a singular verb. Some commonly used collective nouns are *group*, *team*, *army*, *flock*, *family*, and *class*.

Singular: The class *is* going on a field trip.

In this sentence, *class* is a collective noun. Although the class consists of many students, the class is treated as a singular unit and requires a singular verb form.

Singular: Our family *goes* on vacation every summer.

In American English *family* is generally considered as a singular unit as well. (In British English, family may also be used as a non-collective noun, and the verb can be in either a singular or plural form.)

RULE 5: The Subject Follows the Verb

You may encounter sentences in which the subject comes after the verb instead of before the verb. In other words, the subject of the sentence may not appear where you expect it to appear. To ensure proper subject-verb agreement, you must correctly identify the subject and the verb.

Here or There

In sentences that begin with *here* or *there*, the subject follows the verb.

Here *is* my wallet!

There *are* thirty dolphins in the water.

If you have trouble identifying the subject and the verb in sentences that start with *here* or *there*; it may help to reverse the order of the sentence so the subject comes first.

My wallet *is* here!

Thirty dolphins *are* in the water.

Questions

When you ask questions, a question word (*who*, *what*, *where*, *when*, *why*, or *how*) appears first. The verb and then the subject follow.

Who *are* the people you are related to?

When *am* I going to go to the grocery store?

RULE 6: Subjects that Appear Plural

Some subjects, although they appear plural, are singular in meaning and take a singular verb.

The news *seems* more and more depressing every day.

Measles *is* the only childhood disease I haven't had.

Physics *is* a difficult subject.

RULE 7: Amounts

A singular verb is generally used after words denoting an amount (time, money, measurement, weight, volume).

Three weeks *is* a long vacation.

Five hours *was* the longest trip on our itinerary.

RULE 8: Either/Or and Neither/Nor

Some sentences use **either-or** or **neither-nor** to frame a compound subject. In those instances, you determine the correct verb choice by focusing on the second part of the subject.

EXAMPLE – Either the council members or the mayor **attends** the Fourth of July celebration each year.

EXAMPLE – Either the mayor or the council members **attend** the Fourth of July celebration each year.

EXAMPLE-- Neither *the teacher* nor the students **have** arrived for class.

If a sentence starts with **Neither** followed by the preposition **of**, the word *Neither* is the subject and is considered singular for *Not one*.

EXAMPLE: Neither of the professors **has** donated money to the college.

MEANING – Not one (of the professors) **has** donated money to the college

Rule 8 derived from: [Journalistic Skills for Grammar, Spelling and Punctuation](#) Copyright © 2023 by Dave Bostwick licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#). (edited for length)

Tip

If you have trouble finding the subject and the verb in questions, try answering the question being asked: When *am* I going to the grocery store? I *am* going to the grocery store tonight.

Exercise 1.2.7

Correct the errors in subject-verb agreement in the following sentences. If there are no errors in subject-verb agreement, write OK.

1. My dog and cats chases each other all the time.

2. The books that are in my library is the best I have ever read.

3. Everyone are going to the concert except me.

4. My family are moving to California.

5. Here are the books that contain numerous grammar exercises.

6. There is a lot of students in the class.

7. Either the cats or the dog are scratching the furniture. The sofa is destroyed!

8. Sixteen weeks is the typical length of a full semester.

9. My sister and brother always clean up after themselves.

10. Our group have the answers to the questions.

11. Three hours are a long time for a child to sit still.

12. Physics are an advanced subject in high school.

13. Neither of my brothers likes cats.

14. Neither the cats nor the dog are allowed in this room.

Exercise 1.2.8

Correct the errors in subject-verb agreement in the following paragraph.

Dear Hiring Manager,

I feels that I am the ideal candidate for the receptionist position at your company. I has three years of experience as a receptionist in a company that is similar to yours. My phone skills and written communication is excellent. These skills, and others that I have learned on the job, helps me understand that everyone in a company help make the business a success. At my current job, the team always say that I am very helpful. Everyone appreciate when I go the extra mile to get the job done right. As you will see in my recommendation letters, my current coworkers and employer feels that I am an asset to the team. I am also known as both efficient and well-organized. Is there any other details about me that you would like to know? If so, please contact me. Attached is my resumé and personal statement. You can contact me by mail and phone number which is provided below. I looks forward to speaking with you in person.

Sincerely,

Felicia Fellini

Reflection-Writing at Work



Terra Services are dedicated to serving our clients' needs. We settles for nothing less than high quality work, delivered on time. The next time you needs assistance getting your project off the ground, contact Terra Services, where everybody know how important it is that you get the job done right.

Imagine that you are a prospective client and that you saw this ad online. Would you call Terra Services to handle your next project? Probably not! Mistakes in subject-verb agreement can cost a company business. Paying careful attention to grammatical details ensures professionalism that clients will recognize and respect.

Contributors and Attributions

Adapted from [College ESL Writers: Applied Grammar and Composing Strategies for Success](#). **Authored by:** Barbara Hall and Elizabeth Wallace. **Provided by:** Gallileo Open Learning Materials. **License:** CC BY-NC-SA (3.0): Attribution.

Adapted from [Writing for Success](#). **Provided by:** The Saylor Foundation. **License:** [CC-NC-SA 3.0](#). All rights reserved content: [Subject Verb Agreement](#). **Authored by:** Socratica. **License:** *All Rights Reserved*. **License Terms:** Standard YouTube License.

This page titled [1.1.2: Subject-Verb Agreement](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

1.2: Simple Past and Past Progressive-Usage and Practice

Past Progressive and Simple Past--Usage

(Charts

created in ChatGPT)

Simple Past Tense Usage

Usage	Explanation	Examples
Completed Actions	Describes actions that were completed in the past.	- I visited Paris last summer. - She finished her homework yesterday.
Past Habits	Refers to repeated actions or habits in the past (often used with time expressions like "always").	- He always walked to school when he was a kid. - They played chess every evening.
Specific Time in the Past	Indicates actions that happened at a specific time in the past.	- We arrived at 8 PM. - She called me last night.
Series of Events	Describes a sequence of actions in the past.	- He came in, turned on the light, and sat down.
States in the Past	Refers to situations or conditions that existed in the past.	- The weather was cold yesterday. - She seemed happy.

Past Progressive Tense Usage

Usage	Explanation	Examples
Actions in Progress in the Past	Describes actions that were ongoing at a specific moment in the past.	- At 8 PM, I was watching TV. - She was reading during the rainstorm.
Interrupted Actions	Refers to an ongoing action in the past that was interrupted by another action.	- I was cooking when the phone rang. - We were playing tennis when it started to rain.
Parallel Actions	Describes two or more actions happening simultaneously in the past.	- While I was studying, she was watching TV. - They were laughing and talking.
Setting the Scene	Used to provide background information or describe a scene in a story.	- The sun was setting, and the birds were singing. - People were chatting at the party.
Temporary Past Situations	Refers to temporary situations or actions in the past.	- He was staying at his friend's house for a week.

Punctuation Rule

Some of the above sentences are complex sentences, made up of two clauses: a time clause and a main clause. If the time clause comes first, it is followed by a comma.

Main Clause

Time Clause

I was watching a movie while I was ironing my clothes.

Time Clause

Main Clause

While my son was driving my car, I was sitting next to him.

Past Progressive-Practice: Exercise 2.1: Ongoing Actions in the Past

Use the pictures to complete the response to the question. What were you doing at midnight on December 31st ? Use past progressive tense.



Photo by [Jae Park](#) on [Unsplash](#)

1. "I was at Disney World in Florida with my family. At midnight, we....."



Image by [Freepik](#)

2. "My friends and I were in Germany. We were outside in front of a restaurant. We....."



Image by [Freepik](#)

3. "I was in a nightclub at a New Year's Eve party. When the clock struck midnight, I"



Image by [Freepik](#)

4. "I was in my apartment with my friends Gary and Liz. We were"

Exercise 2.2: Simultaneous Actions

Read the story and answer the questions that follow. Write your answers in complete sentences. Don't forget to change "I" to "you" and "my" to "your." Use commas where necessary.

Yesterday evening, while I was cooking dinner, my sister was talking on the phone with her friend. The kids were playing in the backyard, and the dog was barking at a squirrel on the fence. Meanwhile, my dad was reading the newspaper in the living room, and my mom was knitting a scarf. The TV was on, but nobody was watching it. Outside, the rain was falling steadily, and the wind was blowing through the trees. At the same time, a neighbor was walking their dog with a big umbrella. Just as I was setting the table, the power went out, and everything suddenly became quiet.

Questions

1. What was my sister doing while I was cooking dinner?
2. Where were the kids and the dog playing?
3. What was my dad doing, and what was my mom doing at the same time?
4. Why wasn't anyone watching the TV? (Use your imagination!)
5. What was happening outside while the rain was falling steadily?

Videos

Watch [this video](#) to learn about the simple past tense. Watch [this video](#) to learn about the difference between simple and continuous past.

Watch [this video](#) and [this video](#) to learn more about the past continuous form.

This page titled [1.2: Simple Past and Past Progressive-Usage and Practice](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

1.3: Practice with Simple Past and Past Progressive

Open the link for more explanation about Simple Past (Past Simple) and Past Progressive (Continuous). <https://www.englishpage.com/verbpage/pastcontinuous.html>

Exercise 2.3: Fill-in-the-Blank

Insert the verbs in their correct form (either past progressive or simple past forms) into the following sentences.

For example, for the verb "walk": 'Because it was dark, I _____ home quickly.'

Answer: 'Because it was dark, I walked home quickly.'

This used the verb in its simple past form.

1. When we _____ (see) Jane, the children _____ (jump) on the bouncy castle.
2. I _____ (be) scared but excited when I _____ (fly) to Spain.
3. When the letter _____ (arrive), I _____ (cook) dinner for my wife.
4. I _____ (want) to be a dancer when I _____ (be) young.
5. How fast _____ (you/drive), when you _____ (have) the accident?

Exercise 2.4: Matching

Match each one of these sentence beginnings:

1. Every morning last summer I jogged _____
2. When I saw you, _____
3. My brother was making funny faces _____
4. Kate enjoyed playing with the sand _____

With one of these sentence endings (make sure it has the right form of the verb!):

- A) ...you were dancing.
- B) ...while I was living in Brazil.
- C) ...while her mom was reading a magazine.
- D) ...when I cooked your dinner.

This work from [We Love Teaching English](#) is licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution - Non-Commercial - No-Derivatives 4.0 International License](#).

Exercise 2.5: Past Progressive or Simple Past

Select the response from the list that best completes the sentence. Two answers may be correct.

1. George (came / was coming) to this country in 2007.
2. He (attended / was attending) college classes every day.
3. He (took / was taking) a writing class while his brother was taking a grammar class.
4. He attended regularly, studied hard, and (did / was doing) very well.
5. At home, in Athens, he (lived / was living) with his parents until he left for college.
6. When he first came to the U.S., he (lived / was living) with his uncle and his family for a while.
7. He (returned / was returning) home whenever he had the opportunity.
8. He finally (returned / was returning) home for good (permanently) last month.
9. George (received / was receiving) an engineering degree last June.

10. He (began / was beginning) working for an engineering company a week after he returned home.

Exercise 2.6: Interrupted Actions

Make one sentence using the following actions. One of the actions will require the past progressive, and the other one will require the simple past tense. Use commas where necessary.

For example: *pick potatoes in my garden find a piece of glass*

While I was picking potatoes in my garden yesterday, I found a piece of glass.

1. *stop to buy a cup of coffee drive to school*
2. *work in my office get a phone call from my wife*
3. *drive to work get stuck in a traffic jam*
4. *break a glass help my wife in the kitchen*
5. *watch television fall asleep*

Exercise 2.7: A Weekend Trip

Correct or Incorrect?

Select an option (correct or incorrect) as your response. If the sentence is incorrect, make corrections above or below the errors.

1. My brother and I went on a weekend trip after school finished in June.

Correct Incorrect

2. We put everything in the back of my car and drived to the mountains to camp for a week.

Correct Incorrect

3. When we arrived there, we setted up our campsite and prepared for lunch.

Correct Incorrect

4. Suddenly, my brother said, "Dude, where you put the tent?"

Correct Incorrect

5. I replied, "Uh...I thought you pack the tent."

Correct Incorrect

Exercise 2.8: Error Correction

Camping Without a Tent

A. Read for errors and correct. Only the first sentence has no errors.

By accident, we left our tent at home. We have no idea how to get by without a tent at night. The first night, we were hanging a string between two trees and throwed a blanket over it, but the blanket falled in our faces, so we sleep in the car. The next night, we were tying the corners of the blanket down. The blanket was stayed in place, but the mosquitoes eating us alive. As the campers next to us leaving, we ask to buy their old tent. They agree to sell it to us for very little money. Our problem was solved. The same day, we catched fish and fryed them. We staying up late and have a good time until the camp fire went out. So we called it a night, crawl into our tent and were falling peacefully asleep.

get by – survive with the minimum; live without something

ate us alive – bit or stung us several times

call it a night (expression) – end the late-evening or late-night activity

crawl (V) – move on hands and knees

Writing Practice: The Past Tenses

An achievement is the act of reaching a goal. Examples of achievements include:

- Completing a difficult class
- Earning a degree
- Getting a job
- Saving enough money to buy a house or car
- Raising a healthy family
- Learning to cook a special dish

Think of two more examples with your classmates...

When we achieve a goal, we feel proud. Write a list of three achievements that make you feel proud...

Choose one achievement and write a paragraph about it. Describe all of the steps that you took to achieve your goal. What was difficult about achieving your goal? Use Simple Past and Past Progressive tenses. Other tenses may also be needed.

[Grammar-Quizzes](#) › [Verb Phrases](#) › [Verbs](#) › [Past](#) › Past vs. Past Progressive

Practices 3, 4 and 5 from Grammar Quizzes by [Julie Sevastopoulos](#) licensed for use under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#).

This page titled [1.3: Practice with Simple Past and Past Progressive](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

1.4: The Future

Overview: Future Tense Forms

Read these sentences...

- I will help you with the dishes.
- She is going to call her son to cheer him up.
- We might/may discuss the "Happiness in Denmark" article in class today.
- I am writing in my journal for twenty minutes this morning to boost my mood.
- The class meets from 8:30 to 10:30 am.
- He plans to do a happiness survey tomorrow.

What are some ways we make the future tense?

Future Tense Form

- "Will" + base form verb
- "Be" + "going to" + base form verb
- Modal of possibility ("may/might/could") + base form verb
- Present continuous
- Present tense
- "Plan to" + base form verb
- Future continuous

Meaning: "Will" + Base Form

- I will do my homework after class.
- I will bring plates to the party.
- I'll have the chicken teriyaki.
- It will probably rain tomorrow.

Which sentence is used to volunteer for a task? Which sentence is used to make a quick decision? Which sentence is used to make a promise? Which sentence is used to make a prediction?

Answers

- The first sentence is used to make a promise.
- The second sentence is used to volunteer for a task.
- The third sentence is used to make a quick decision.
- The fourth sentence used to make a prediction.

Meaning: "Be Going To" + Base Form

- It's going to rain this afternoon.
- We're going to conduct a survey on happiness this semester.

Which sentence is about a plan? Which sentence is about a prediction?

Answers

- The first sentence is about a prediction.
- The second sentence is about a plan.

"Be going to" is used for both plans and predictions.

Which of these events are usually planned?

- Getting a cold
- Having a party
- Doing your homework
- The weather
- Winning the lottery
- Visiting a friend
- Traveling

Answers

- Having a party
- Doing your homework
- Visiting a friend
- Traveling

Use "be going to," "plan to," simple present, or present progressive for events that are planned. Use "be going to," "will," "might," and "may" for predictions...

- She will get a cold if she doesn't take care of herself.
 - This is a prediction.
- They are going to have a party.
 - This is a plan.
- They plan to do their homework after class.
 - This is a plan.
- Maybe it will rain this afternoon.
 - This is a prediction.

Predictions with Evidence

Although both *will* and *be going to* are used for predictions. When the prediction is expected due to present evidence, we must use *be going to*.

- Look at those dark clouds! It's **going to rain**. (NOT It will rain)
- The lid fell off your coffee. It's **going to spill**!
- Larry only finished half of the test. He **is** definitely **going to fail**.

Key Takeaways for "Will" and "Be Going To"

Use "will" for...	Predictions, volunteering, promises, quick decisions Plans or decisions made at the moment	Modify with... Certainly, definitely, probably, perhaps or maybe
Use "be going to" for...	Predictions and plans already made before Predictions with evidence	Modify with... Certainly, definitely, probably, perhaps or maybe

More Ways to Talk About Future Plans

Present progressive for plans that are certain.

- We're traveling to Europe this summer. We have the tickets and reservations.

"Plan to" + base form verb for planned events, certain or uncertain, that require arrangement.

- They plan to get married in March.
- She plans to move in April, but she hasn't found a house yet.

Simple present tense for scheduled events in the future.

- The train leaves at 2:00 PM.
- The class starts at 9:00 AM tomorrow.

Modals "may/might/could" + base form of verb for uncertain events in the future, planned or predicted.

- I might go to the park tomorrow. (planned, uncertain)
- It could rain next week. (prediction, uncertain)
- We may eat out this evening. (planned, uncertain)

Key Takeaways for Present Progressive, Simple Present, "Plan To," and Modals of Future Possibility

Use present progressive for...	Planned events that are certain	Sometimes modified with "probably" or "definitely"
Use simple present for...	Scheduled events	May be modified with "definitely"
Use "plan to" + base form for...	Planned events that are certain or not certain	Usually not modified
Use "might," "may," "could" for...	Predictions or plans that are uncertain	Not modified

Future Clauses

Future tenses are often used in sentences with more than one clause (complex sentences). A clause is a sentence part that has a subject and verb combination.

An independent (main) clause has a complete thought. It can stand alone as a sentence.

A dependent clause does not have a complete thought. It cannot stand alone as a sentence. It starts with a subordinating conjunctions such as: if, when, after, as, since, before or until. It is connected to an independent clause to make a complex sentence.

Read the sentences below...

- If you **express** gratitude every day, you **will begin to feel** more optimistic.
- My grandmother **is going to be** so happy when she **receives** this thank you letter.
- I **might go** to the gym after I **finish** my homework. Exercise always cheers me up.
- Jim will move to Dallas next year if he gets a job in the tech industry.

What tense is used in each dependent (If or time) clause? What tense is used in each independent/main clause? Which sentence has a comma? Can you guess the rule about commas and dependent clauses?

Answers

In complex sentences in the future time, the dependent clause uses present tense, and the independent clause uses future tense. If the dependent clause comes first, it is followed by a comma.

Videos and Other Resources

Watch [this video](#) to learn more about future tenses... Watch [this video](#) for more information about the future continuous...

Watch [this video](#) and [this video](#) about future time clauses... For more information and exercises about future continuous, try [this website](#) and [this website](#)...

Practice Using the Future Tenses

Read [the article "Five Things That Will Make You Happier"](#) by Clara Moskowitz

Make a plan to boost your happiness for the rest of the semester. What do you plan to do? How do you predict it will help? How certain are you about the results? Write a paragraph using some of the future tenses to explain your plan.

This page titled [1.4: The Future](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

1.4.1: Practice with Future Time

Exercise 3.1: Prediction with Evidence

Read the situations and say what is going to happen: Ex. There are a lot of black clouds in the sky. It's going to rain

- a) You haven't studied for your exam. You _____.
- b) John is running on a wet floor. He _____.
- c) The match is almost over, and we have scored another goal. We _____.
- d) They are standing in line at the stadium. They _____.
- e) Rebecca put plates, glasses and silverware on the dinner table. Her family _____.

Exercise 3.2: Fill-in-the-Blank

Write the verb in the correct form, present progressive, simple present or 'be going to'. If more than one answer is possible, write all possible answers.

- a) Tonight I _____ (cook) a special meal with my family.
- b) The sky is clear, but it might rain later. We _____ (bring) our umbrellas, just in case.
- c) What _____ (you/do) on Saturday?
- d) It's 5 AM, and David is still awake. He _____ (feel) tired tomorrow.
- e) Gas prices _____ (increase) if the supply of oil is disrupted.
- f) I'm exhausted! I _____ (go) to bed as soon as I get home.
- g) I think our team _____ (win) the game tonight.
- h) My children _____ (play) the violin in a school concert on Friday. I'm so excited!
- i) Sorry, Anna can't come to your party. She _____ (meet) me for dinner on Saturday.

Exercise 3 from [We Love Teaching English](#) is licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution - Non-Commercial - No-Derivatives 4.0 International License](#).

Exercise 3.3: Future Time Clauses

Combine the following sentences to form complex sentences with the conjunctions given. Each new sentence will contain a future time clause. Remember to use simple present in the time clause.

Example: John will retire. He will enjoy more leisure time. (when) When John retires, he will enjoy more leisure time.



[a robot pet toy](#) © Photo by Kindel Media from Pexels

- 1. They will save enough money. They will go on vacation.
(after) _____
- 2. They will retire. They will not be lonely. (when) _____
- 3. They will enjoy many conveniences in daily retirement living. There will be more inventions.
(when) _____

4. For example, robot pets will keep them company. Robot pets will be available. (as soon as) _____
5. Those pets will make seniors happy. They will “adopt” the robot pets. (when) _____
6. The robot pets will even be by their bedside. The seniors will be sleeping. (while) _____

Exercise 3.4: Will or Be Going To

“Will” and “am/is/are going to” can both be used to make predictions about future. Use the statements to make affirmative or negative predictions about conditions 15 years from now using the statements. Then share your thoughts with your partner. Explain why you feel that way.

Begin your sentences like this: **Fifteen years in the future, or Fifteen years from now,**



[Grey and Black Tunnel Overlooking White Cloudy and Blue Sky](#) © Pixabay

Example: There will be no more war in the world. *Fifteen years from now, there will still be war in the world.*

1. Every country is going to have free elections.
2. Everyone in the U.S. is going to have affordable health insurance.
3. The number of homeless people in Houston is going to be reduced in half.
4. College tuition is going to be free for everyone.
5. I will enjoy whatever hobby I do not have time for right now.
6. I am going to have the kind of family I have always wanted (personality of my spouse, number of my children ...)
7. I will be working at my dream job.

Exercise 3.5: Fill-in-the-Blank

The following paragraph is about AI technology in the future. Fill in the appropriate tenses with the given verbs. Use: Will, Be Going to, or Simple Present. If two verb forms are possible, write both forms. Remember to use simple present in time clauses when the main clause is about the future.

Ways Artificial Intelligence Will Change Our Lives

Artificial Intelligence (AI) has already transformed a lot of areas of our lives. It **will continue** (*continue*) to impact this world for years to come. Cyber-security experts (1) _____ (know) how to prevent cyber-attacks because AI (2) _____ (automatically, sort) data into high-risk and low-risk information. The technology (3) _____ (also, help) with national security effectively because AI-enabled sensors (4) _____ (provide) information in threat detection. In future agriculture, farming (5) _____ (be) much more efficient because AI (6) _____ (be) able to inform the farmers of the best time to plant and pick crops. In medicine, computer-aided interpretation of medical images and remote diagnosis (7) _____ (aid) doctors in timely treatment of patients in places where medical care is not readily available. In the area of workforce safety and health, employees (8) _____ (get) relief from overwork and musculoskeletal injuries, etc. whenever AI (9) _____ (perform) the tasks. Even the job market (10) _____ (benefit) from using such technology when AI-powered engines (11) _____ (simplify) the complexity of job hunting and (12) _____ (match) the most

relevant positions. Education is another area. Future educational devices (13)_____ (meet) the exact needs of each student and (14)_____ (give) immediate feedback while AI (15)_____ (operate). The possibilities of AI technology are endless and (16)_____ (surely, bring) revolution in the ways we work, study, and live.

Adapted from https://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Applications_of_artificial_intelligence#Education. Last accessed on September 22, 2021.

Exercise 3.6: Error Correction:

Correct six more verb errors in the following paragraph about future online learning.

Online Learning: A Growing Trend

will become

Online learning **will be become** more popular in colleges in the next few years. In-person classes will still be dominant on college campuses, but there are going be more and more virtual learning opportunities. While many students probably did not experience this mode of education in the past, they will be grow increasingly accustomed to remote learning. It is possible that every student will has the experience of remote learning. When this will happen, more students will able to complete their study more easily. It is estimated that in five years all college students going to take at least one course online.

Exercise 3.7: Writing Assignment

Write a short paragraph (4-6 sentences) for each topic below-Topic 1 and Topic 2. Use appropriate tenses. Include at least two future time clauses in each paragraph. You can type the paragraphs at the bottom of the page (with Kami).

Topic 1: What changes will happen in _____ (Choose **one** topic from the list or name a new topic.) in the next ten-15 years?

-education -jobs -family -health care -traveling -social media -the environment

Topic 2: What will your life be like in ten years? What will you do to achieve these accomplishments?

- What will you do for a living?
- What kind of family life will you have?
- What hobbies will you enjoy?
- Where will you live?

My Paragraphs:

Exercises 3 to 7 adapted from [Building Academic Writing Skills](#) Copyright © 2022 by Cui, Lin licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#)

This page titled [1.4.1: Practice with Future Time](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

2: Perfect Tenses

- 2.1: Present Perfect Tense
- 2.2: Present Perfect Tense with Time Expressions
- 2.3: Simple Past vs Present Perfect
- 2.4: Present Perfect Progressive
- 2.5: Past Perfect
- 2.6: Past Perfect Progressive (Continuous) Tense
- 2.7: Past Perfect vs Past Perfect Progressive

This page titled [2: Perfect Tenses](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

2.1: Present Perfect Tense



Present Perfect Tense Form and Usage

Form	Explanation	Examples
Affirmative	Subject + have/has + past participle	- I have finished the report. - She has visited Paris.
Negative	Subject + have/has + not + past participle Subject + haven't/hasn't + past participle	-We haven't eaten lunch yet. -He has not taken the test.
Questions	(Wh-word) Have/Has + Subject + past participle	-Have you done your homework? -Where has he gone?

Usage	Explanation	Examples
Unspecified Time	Describes actions or experiences without mentioning when they happened or repeated actions in the past without saying when.	- I have seen that movie before. - She has traveled to Japan three times.
Life Experiences	Refers to actions or events someone has experienced in their life up to now.	- He has climbed Mount Everest. - They have never been to Australia.
Actions Continuing to Present	Describes actions that started in the past and continue into the present.	- She has lived here for five years. - I have worked here since May.
Recently Completed Actions	Describes actions completed very recently, often with words like "just," or "already."	- I have just finished my homework. - He has already bought his textbook.
Results in the Present	Focuses on past actions that have a present consequence or relevance.	- He has broken his leg.(It's still broken.) - The package has arrived.

Practice Present Perfect Tense

Exercise 2.1.1: Present Perfect Tense-Form

Fill in the blanks with the present perfect tense of the given verbs. Follow the rules of subject and verb agreement!

e.g: She **has studied** [study] English for two years.

1. I _____ [take] a class with our grammar teacher before.
 2. Mr. and Mrs. Jones _____ [be] our neighbors for 20 years.
 3. Everyone _____ [finish] taking the test.
 4. How long _____ you _____ [live] in Texas?
 5. She _____ [eat/not] breakfast yet.
 6. The students in the back of the classroom _____ [answer/not] any questions today.
 7. How many times _____ you _____ [go] to Galveston this month?
 8. My family _____ already _____ [come] to the United States three times since I moved here.
 9. There _____ [be] several accidents since they began doing the road construction.
 10. My brother _____ [teach] elementary school for two years.
-

Exercise 2.1.2: Present Perfect Tense-Usage

A: Why is the present perfect used? Read the explanations (1 to 5) below.

1. Action that happened at an unspecified time or repeated actions in the past without saying when.
2. Actions or events someone has experienced at some time in their life.
3. Action started in the past and continued to the present [for/since/how long]
4. Recently completed action
5. Past action with a result or effect in the present.

B: Underline the present perfect tense verb in each of the following sentences. Then write the number from the above explanations 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5 to state the reason. There may be more than one reason.

1. _____ My family has gone to San Antonio four times.
2. _____ We have been in class since 8:30 this morning.
3. _____ Have you ever been to New York?
4. _____ I have taught at San Jacinto College for 26 years.
5. _____ I haven't had my lunch yet, and I am very hungry.

6. _____ She has already finished her homework. Now, she can go out with her friends.
7. _____ We have studied five tenses so far.
8. _____ We have studied the present perfect since we came to class today.
9. _____ How long have you lived in Texas?

Exercise 2.1.3: Using Present Perfect to Discuss Our Past Experiences

We often use present perfect tense to discuss past experiences. The following questions will give you practice in using the present perfect to discuss your experiences with travel in the past.

Part 1: For each question below, answer with information about yourself. Write in complete sentences. Use present perfect tense.

- What cities or states have you visited in the United States?
- What countries have you visited outside of your own country?
- What is the best place you have ever traveled to? Why did you like it?

Part 2: Interview a partner and write their answers to the above questions on a separate piece of paper. Use the pronouns "he" or "she" or use the person's name.

Example: In the United States, Samuel has visited New York City and Dallas, Texas. He has also been to Mexico and Canada.

Extended Practice-Writing Assignment:

For homework, use your answers to Part 2 above to write a paragraph about your partner.

Example Paragraph

Today, I talked to Samuel about his travel in the past. He has traveled to several places in the United States as well to other countries. In the United States, he has been to San Francisco, California and Dallas, Texas. He has also visited Mexico and Canada. The place that he liked best was Mexico City, Mexico. He enjoyed interacting with the Mexican people, learning about their culture and eating Mexican food.

Videos and Other Resources

Watch [this video](#) to learn more about forming and using present perfect...

Try [this website](#) to practice forming and using present perfect..

Exercises adapted from the page titled [2.3: Present Perfect Tense](#), shared under a [CC BY-NC 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Nooshi Borhan](#) (Contra Costa College)

This page titled [2.1: Present Perfect Tense](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

2.2: Present Perfect Tense with Time Expressions



Photo by Allyson Marceau

Time Expressions Used with Present Perfect

Ever means “at any time”. It is usually used with questions. It is placed before the past participle • Have you ever been to the Alamo? It is sometimes used in negative statements with a contracted form. (formal) • We haven't ever traveled overseas.	Yet means “up to now”. It is usually placed at the end of a question. • Have you visited NASA yet? • Has Josh eaten breakfast yet? Yet is also used in negative sentences. • We haven't visited the Alamo yet.	Already means “before now”. We use it to say that something happened before something else or earlier than expected. It may come before the past participle or at the end of the question. • Have you already finished your homework? • I have already eaten breakfast.
Never means "not at any time." It is a more common way to express negative meanings. It is placed before the past participle • We have never traveled overseas. • Joe has never attended college. Just refers to the very recent past. It comes before the past participle. • I've just bought a new car. • Nat has just arrived.	Still is used with present perfect in negative sentences to talk about actions that we expected to happen before now. Still looks back at the past. It is usually placed before "have" or "has." • Sue still hasn't arrived. She said she'd be here at two o'clock. (I expected Sue to arrive before now.) • Despite our repeated requests, the city still has not implemented a curbside recycling service.	Recently means "in the near past." It refers to a time that is less recent than "just." It usually comes before the past participle or at the end of the sentence. • I've recently eaten at that restaurant. • I've seen that movie recently.
So far means "up to now" and often implies that something different might happen later. It comes before or after a sentence. • It's been quiet so far. • So far, we have completed five units.	For refers to the duration of time. • I have lived in the United States for five years. • We have been in the classroom for two hours.	Since refers to the point in time that an action began. • I have lived in the United States since I graduated from high school. • Sheila has played the piano since she was five

Exercise 2.2.1: Put the words in the jumbled sentences in the correct order:

1. visited | Have | you | Rome | ever?
2. to | She | has | moved | recently | a | new | city.
3. finished | still | homework | I | have | not | my
4. have | left | for | They | already | the | airport.
5. job | just | He | a | new | has | started.
6. eaten | have | they | yet | Have | dinner ?
7. seen | recently | you | him | Have?
8. has | never | He | Japan | been | to.
9. she | finished | already | her | Has | presentation

Exercise 2.2.2

Choose the correct adverb (ever, never, yet, already, just, recently) to complete each sentence. Some sentences have more than one correct answer.

1. Have you _____ been to Asia?
2. She has _____ finished her homework.
3. They haven't arrived _____.
4. He has _____ started his new job.
5. We have _____ moved to a new house.
6. Have you _____ seen the latest movie?
7. She has _____ received a promotion at work.
8. They haven't met their new neighbors _____.
9. He has _____ traveled to Europe.
10. Have you _____ tried sushi before?

Exercise 2.2.3

Answer the following questions. Use **already** or **yet**.

1. Have you driven on a Texas freeway?
2. Have you had breakfast today?
3. Have you finished any classes at San Jacinto College yet?
4. Have you ever lived in another state in the US?
5. Have you ever read a complete book in English?
6. Have you gotten your driver's license yet?

Practice Present Perfect Tense

Exercise 2.2.4

Choose the correct adverb from the options provided to complete each sentence

1. Sarah has _____ finished her homework.
a) already b) ever c) so far d) still
2. Have you _____ been to Paris?
a) yet b) so far c) never d) ever

3. They have _____ cleaned the entire house.
a) still b) ever c) already d) so far
4. We have _____ seen the new movie that just came out, and we loved it.
a) yet b) ever c) just d) never
5. Tom has visited ten states in the United States _____. He plans to visit all fifty states in his lifetime.
a) just b) never c) yet d) so far
6. I have _____ eaten breakfast, but I'm still hungry.
a) already b) never c) so far d) ever
7. Have you seen John _____?
a) ever b) just c) so far d) recently
8. She hasn't finished her project _____.
a) already b) just c) yet d) ever
9. Have you _____ eaten sushi before?
a) just b) ever c) recently d) never

Exercise 2.2.5

Choose the correct option (for or since) to complete each sentence.

1. She has worked at the company for / since five years.
2. They have known each other for / since they were children.
3. He has lived in this city for / since 2010.
4. We have been friends for / since a long time.
5. She has not studied math for / since she started college.
6. We have been best friends for / since we met in college.
7. We have lived in our new house for / since six months.
8. He has played the guitar for / since he was a teenager.

Page 2.2-Original content created by Allyson Marceau

This page titled [2.2: Present Perfect Tense with Time Expressions](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

2.3: Simple Past vs Present Perfect

Simple Past vs. Present Perfect

SIMPLE PAST: COMPLETED IN PAST

A verb in the **simple past tense** can express that an activity, event or state began and ended in the past. Signal phrases such as *last year*, *a year ago* and *in 2017* make clear that the activity occurred in a time in the past. These activities or states have no clear connection to the present. See [Past Adverbs](#).



- Construction on the Tower of Pisa **started** in 1173.
- Builders **added** a third story in 1185. Then, it **began** to lean. (**lean** (V) – to be at an angle that is not upright at 90°)
- It **leaned** 5.5° before the renovation. It **leaned** only 3.99° after the renovation. Officials **closed** the tower during the 1990s.
- The tower was **reopened** in 2001.



A verb in the **simple past tense** can describe an activity, event or state of people who are no longer alive or situations which are obviously in the past, or during a period which is finished - especially with *for*.

- My grandfather **lived** alone after my grandmother passed away
- Dickens **wrote** a lot of novels.
- The Romans **built** a lot of roads.
- We **lived** in Paris **for three years** when I was a child.

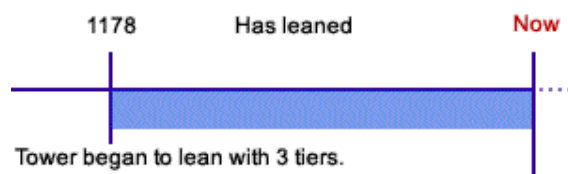
PRESENT PERFECT-CONNECTED TO THE PRESENT

Present Perfect is used when we are talking about a past event or condition which has some sort of connection with, or effect on, the **present**. The event or condition may: Start in the past and continue to the present, End recently in the past, Be part of our lifetime experiences, or End in the past but have an effect on the present. These activities or conditions may also continue into the future.

PRESENT PERFECT-PAST TO PRESENT

A verb in the present perfect may express that an activity began in the past and continued up to the present (and may extend into the future.) Adverbs **so far**, and **up to now** show this past-to-present timing. It can also express that an activity occurred during a specified period up until now-especially with **for** and **since**.

- The Tower of Pisa **has leaned** to the south since its third story was added in 1178.
- It has continued to lean **up to now**.
- Engineers have gradually reduced the lean by 14 centimeters **so far**.



PRESENT PERFECT-UNSPECIFIED TIME IN THE PAST

A verb in the Present Perfect can be used to express **single or repeated events** which have or haven't happened at **no specific time in the past** (In the indefinite past). These events do not continue into the present. They are finished

- In the (very) recent past - especially with adverbs like *just*, *yet*, *already* etc...
 - We **have just eaten** dinner.
 - I **have already done** my homework.
- In the current (unfinished) time period - *today*, *this year/morning/evening/ month/semester* etc...
 - This semester, I **have written** three essays so far.
- During our lifetime up until now - especially with words like *ever* and *never*.
 - I **have never seen** the Tower of Pisa.
 - **Have you ever been** to Italy?
- During a specified period up until now - especially with *for* and *since*
 - We **have had** this car *for five years*.
 - I **have been** here *since five in the morning*.

PRESENT PERFECT-EFFECTING THE PRESENT

A verb in the Present Perfect can be used to express **single or repeated events** which happened or didn't happen in the past at an unspecified time and have an effect on or result in the present. The adverbs **yet** and **already** and **still** can be used in these contexts.

- *Already* signifies that something was done earlier than expected:
 - I **have already finished** my homework. Now I have a little free time before I have to go to class.
- *Yet* is used when something has not happened but is expected to happen in the future:
 - We **haven't eaten** lunch **yet**. We are going home to get something to eat.
- *Still* signifies that something that was expected has not happened:
 - Juan **still hasn't made** his bed. I **have already asked** him three times!

Simple Past and Present Perfect : Past and Present Reference

One way of thinking about the difference in use of simple past and present perfect is to think of the names of the tenses themselves: **Simple Past** is used for something which is past and finished with, while **Present Perfect** is used when we are talking about a past event which has some sort of connection with, or effect on, the **present**.

If I say - *I went to Paris last year*, I am referring to a specific visit which is finished and done with, when certain things may have happened.

But if I simply say - *I've been to Paris*, the time is not important. What is important is that I have experienced Paris to some extent. I now know how crowded the Louvre can be; what the view from Montmartre is like, how smart the street cleaning trucks are, and so on.

If I say - *I locked myself out of the house yesterday*, it sounds as though that's all in the past, and that everything is OK now, and I can get back in.

But if I say - *I've locked myself out of the house*, it means I still haven't found my keys, with the present result that, for the time being at least, I can't get into my house.

"The Leaning Tower of Pisa." towerofpisa.org/tower-of-pisa-historical-facts/

Exercise 2.3.1: Correct or Incorrect

Decide whether the tense use is correct or incorrect

Select your response **correct** or **incorrect**. If it is incorrect, write the correct sentence below or next to your answer.

1. The Tower of Pisa was the center of attention since a long time.

Correct Incorrect--Correct Sentence:

2. For the people of Pisa, the tower has been a slightly imperfect bell tower to their cathedral.

Correct Incorrect--Correct Sentence:

3. For the Germans during World War II, the tower have been an observation tower and a landmark that deserved protection from bombing.

Correct Incorrect--Correct Sentence:

4. For 600 years, the tower is an example of excellent 11th century design, which unfortunately was placed on a bad foundation.

Correct Incorrect--Correct Sentence:

5. For tourists today, the tower has been a reminder that people make mistakes and that some are very beautiful!

Correct Incorrect--Correct Sentence:

Simple Past vs Present Perfect is derived from [Grammar Quizzes](#) by [Julie Sevastopoulos](#), licensed for use under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#)

Time Reference

When we use Simple Past, we usually given a specific past time reference. We sometimes do this with Present Perfect as well, so the first thing we need to do is to sort out what are past time references and what are present time references. Some expressions may refer to both past and present.

Exercise 2.3.2

In the chart below, identify each expression as a past time reference of a present time reference. Sometimes both are correct.

Time Expression	Past	Present
1. two days ago	☐	☐
2. this morning (it is now 11AM)	☐	☐
3. this morning (it is now 3PM)	☐	☐
4. yesterday	☐	☐
5. today	☐	☐
6. last year / month / week	☐	☐
7. during the summer (It is December now.)	☐	☐
8. since last year	☐	☐
9. last night	☐	☐
10. when he was a child	☐	☐
11. in 2008	☐	☐
12. since 2008	☐	☐
13. five minutes ago	☐	☐

A note on past and current time periods

Expressions like *yesterday*, *last week* and *the year before* are sometimes referred to as past time periods, while *today* and *this week* are referred to as current time periods. We usually use Simple Past with past time periods and Present Perfect with present time periods.

But these are flexible. For example, if it's one o'clock and I haven't had lunch yet, I might consider that it's still morning, so I might use Present Perfect and say - *I **haven't had** any coffee this morning*, even though technically 'this morning' has finished.

Conversely when I get home, although it's still 'today', I probably consider my working day to be over and I might use Simple Past and say - *I **had** so much work to do today*.

So far

We use *so far* to mean up until now in a period that is not yet finished. It is often used with numbers or amounts, which we could reasonably expect to increase by the end of the given period; or with situations that could change later.

- *We've sold ten contracts **so far** this week. (and we hope to sell some more)*
- ***So far** today, I've had 50 emails. (and no doubt I'll get more)*
- *We've had no replies **so far**. (but there's still time)*
- *How much have you done **so far**? (I don't expect you to have finished yet)*
- *Have you enjoyed it **so far**? (you might change your mind later)*

Last week/month/year etc... and the last week/month/year etc...

Be careful with time expressions like *last week /month /year* etc and the *last week/ month/year* etc. They sound similar, but have different meanings and take different tenses:

- *last week* - the previous Monday to Sunday (or however you define your week)
- *I read three books last week.* - Simple Past
- *in the last week* - the seven days up until and including today
- *I've read four books in the last week.* - Present Perfect

The expression *the past week* has the same meaning as the last week - *I've read four books in the past week.* Plural expressions such as *in the last / past few weeks* are also used with Present Perfect.

Exercise 2.3.3

Simple Past or Present Perfect? Use the verbs in the box in the correct tense to fill the blanks. Use contractions after pronouns. Use all of the verbs in the list. You will use some verbs more than once.

make chat see sell ring stay visit see drive go be

1. We _____ to the zoo last Tuesday.
2. The automobile salesman _____ six cars this week.
3. _____ Jack in the last hour or so? (you)
4. Yes. I _____ him before lunch.
5. So far, the concert _____ really good.
6. Last week I _____ about 600 miles.
7. In the last few years, the company _____ a million dollars in profit.
8. Your telephone _____ a minute or so ago.
9. I _____ three model airplanes this morning and it isn't even noon yet.
10. We _____ the beach almost every day this summer so far.
11. They _____ with us for Christmas and left after New Year's Day.
12. I _____ with him several times this week.

Recent Past - Things you've done or haven't done recently

We use Present Perfect to talk about things we've done or haven't done recently, usually with a result in the present. We often use these adverbs: *just, already, yet, still, at last*

Exercise 2.3. 4

Fill the blanks by entering the adverbs in the box. Each one is used twice. Some questions may have more than one possible answer. (Only write one.)

yet · already · still · just · at last (finally)

1. I've _____ finished that book you lent me. It was really great!
2. Have you seen that new film _____. Everyone's talking about it.
3. You _____ haven't answered my question. When is your exam?
4. You don't need to do the dishes; I've _____ done them.
5. She's finished with the computer _____. I've been waiting for hours.
6. I'm sorry but I haven't spoken to Davis about your project _____.
7. It's 9 and you _____ haven't gotten up! Come on, rise and shine..
8. I've _____ told you a hundred times. Don't do that to the cat!

Note : *just*, *recently*: Although *recently* and *just* are usually used with Present Perfect, they can also be used with Simple Past. Sometimes the meaning can change slightly.

Exercise 2.3.5

Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses in either Present Perfect or Simple Past. Include any other words given in the parentheses. Use contractions for negatives.

1. I _____ him leaving just as I arrived. (see)
2. Look who _____ into the room. (just / come)
3. I _____ her quite recently at a friend's party. (meet)
4. There _____ a lot about it in the news lately. (be)
5. We _____ much of them recently. (not / see)
6. I _____ to him about it just the other day. (speak)
7. He _____ to see us lately. (not / be)
8. She _____ at the cookie factory until fairly recently. (work)

In Your Lifetime up to Now

We often use Present Perfect without specifying a time - *Have you seen 'The Shining'?* - and when asking how often somebody has done something - *How many times has your mother seen 'The Sound of Music'?* - meaning during their lifetime up till now. We often use these adverbs:

ever, never, before, often, yet, once etc...

Exercise 2.3.6

Paul and Jenny are at a party on a boat on the River Thames in London. Complete their conversation by entering one word in each blank. The answers include not only the adverbs above, but some other words such as verbs (have/has) and quantity expressions.

1) Paul: Hello, my name's Paul. Haven't we met _____ , somewhere?
2) Jenny: I think we _____ , yes. What a noise that helicopter's making.
3) Paul: Have you _____ flown in a helicopter?
4) Jenny: Only _____ . It was a birthday present. How about you?
5) Paul: No, _____ . But I have been in a glider. That was fun.
6) Jenny: Now that is one of those many things I've _____ done. Ever.
7) Paul: And how _____ times have you flown on commercial flights?
8) Jenny: Oh, lots of _____ . But only on vacation.
9) Paul: And have you _____ had a bad experience when flying?
10) Jenny: No. At least not _____ , knock on wood. (The expression "knock on wood" is said after a confident or positive statement, to express a hope for one's good luck to continue.)
11) Paul: Neither have I, thankfully.
12) Jenny: And have you been on this boat _____ ?
13) Paul: Yes, I _____ , in fact. I came to a party here last year.
14) Jenny: This is my first time. I've _____ been on any of these Thames boats until now.
15) Paul: Oh, isn't that Mary Johnson. I've seen her on TV _____ .
16) Jenny: Yes, that's right. Have you _____ seen her show 'Cook It Right'?
17) Paul: Yes, I have, but not very _____ . I'm usually working then.
18) Jenny: I think I've probably _____ seen every episode. I'm a big fan.
19) Paul: I've never actually seen a TV personality in the flesh _____ ("in the flesh" means "in person")
20) Jenny: Well you have _____ . And she's coming over to speak to us.

Note: never: Note that although we usually use *never* with Present Perfect, it can also be used with Simple Past : *All the time he lived here, he never came to see us.*

Discussing Experiences with Present Perfect and Simple Past

We often use Present Perfect to ask somebody generally about an experience, and then switch to Simple Past when we start talking about specifics.

Exercise 2.3.7

Complete these conversations with the verb given in parentheses in Present Perfect or Simple Past. If no verb is given, enter a short answer. Use contractions in negatives and after pronouns.

Conversation 1

A: _____ (1. you meet) my friend Candy?

B: Yes I have. We _____ (2. meet) at a party back in August.

B. Oh, I think I _____ (3. be) at that party, too.

Conversation 2

A: Oh, no. I _____ (4. lose) my car keys.

B: Are you sure? When _____ (5. you see) them last?

A: I just remember that I _____ (6. put) them down somewhere.

B: It's OK, I _____ (7. find) them. Here you are. They _____ (8. be) on that table over there.

Conversation 3

A: You _____ (9. just come) back from Mexico, haven't you?

B: Yes, we _____ (10. get) back a couple of days ago. It _____ (11. be) absolutely wonderful.

A: Where _____ (12. you go)?

B: We _____ (13. spend) most of the time in the South, near Oaxaca.

A: What _____ (14. you like) most about Mexico?

B: It _____ (15. be) the natural history that _____ (16. impress) us most. We _____ (17. not be) anywhere with such diversity of flora and fauna before.

Conversation 4

A: _____ (18. you ever visit) the Czech Republic?

B: No, but we _____ (19. go) to Slovakia last year. That's just next door.

A: Oh I _____ (20. never be) in Slovakia. What _____ (21. be) your vacation like?

B: Great. We _____ (22. stay) most of the time in the High Tatras. it's really beautiful, and the people _____ (23. be) really friendly. In fact, we _____ (24. decide) to go back again, next year.

"Leaning Tower of Pisa–Exterior." By Jordiferrer. *Wikimedia*, 7 Aug. 2016. Licensed under CC BY-SA4.0 International.

Past and Present Reference adapted from [Random Idea English](#) is licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 3.0 Unported License](#).

This page titled [2.3: Simple Past vs Present Perfect](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

2.4: Present Perfect Progressive

Form of the Present Perfect Progressive (Continuous)

Present Perfect Progressive: Positive and Negative

I We You They	've haven't	been driving.
He/ She/ It	has hasn't	been working.

Present Perfect Progressive: Questions

How long	have	I We You They	been driving?
	has	He/ She/ It	been working?

Using the Present Perfect Progressive

A verb in the **present perfect progressive** expresses that an activity, event, or state has duration or repetition; it started in the past and went on either continuously (without stopping) or repetitively (again and again) up to the present. In some cases, we can choose between the **present perfect** and the **present perfect progressive**. The **present perfect progressive** can be used in place of the **present perfect** to focus on duration.



Engineers **have been working** to save the Tower of Pisa for centuries.

Engineers **have been studying** the foundation since 1817.

Engineers **have been applying** steel braces for several months.

Engineers **have been stabilizing** the foundation since 1838.

A note about *live* and *work*

With the verbs *live* and *work*, present perfect and present perfect progressive can both be used without any difference in meaning:

I have been working at this company for five years.

I have worked at this company for five years.

We have lived in the same house since we moved here.

We have been living in the same house since we moved here.

Completed Amounts and Distances

Use Present Perfect, not Present Perfect Progressive for completed amounts and distances.

We have already driven 300 miles, and we will arrive at our destination soon.

My friends and I have hiked five miles in the park.

I have drunk fifty ounces of water today.

We have studied several verb tenses this semester.

Key Words and Phrases for the Present Perfect Progressive Tense

Some key words and phrases that are often used with the present perfect progressive tense include:

- Recently or lately: Used to describe temporary situations or habits
- All day or all night: Used to describe a single period of time in the past
- Every day or every morning: Used to describe a repeated action in the past
- How long: Used to begin questions
- For: Used with a period of time
- Since: Used to indicate when an activity began

A Note about Recently and Lately

The adverbs *recently* and *lately* have very similar meanings. However, **lately** has a more restricted use:

- Used with continuous actions: It often appears with the present perfect progressive tense to describe ongoing actions happening recently.
 - I have been working a lot *lately*. Incorrect: ~~I have worked a lot lately.~~
- We can also use *recently* to describe recent ongoing actions:
 - I have been working a lot *recently*.
- Not for single events: Don't use *lately* to describe a single event that happened recently.
 - Incorrect: ~~I have played tennis lately.~~

Use of the Present Perfect Progressive

We use the present perfect progressive to express:

1) an action or activity that began in the past and is still in progress.

- Jimmy is very quiet. He's been watching videos all morning (it is still morning, he's still watching videos).
- I've been playing the guitar for five years. (and I am still studying guitar).
- We've been waiting for Mark for two hours (we are still waiting now).
- She's been listening to [Radiohead](#) for nearly an hour. She feels sad.

2) A past activity or action with a duration that has caused present effects. The activity might be finished or might not. The sentence usually gives you the meaning.

- Where have you been? I've been waiting for you for the last half hour.
- They have been studying all day so they are tired.
- A - Why are you out of breath?
B - I've just been playing [football](#).
- A - You look great! Have you been on vacation?
B - No, but I've been watching my diet.

Exercise 2.4.1

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the Present Perfect Progressive (Continuous) tense.

1. My friend _____ (hold) his baby for 20 minutes.
2. My sister _____ (live) in Rhode Island for many years.
3. My sons _____ (play) video games all day long.
4. My neighbor, who is an astronomer, _____ (look) at stars all night long.
5. I _____ (drive) around Chinatown looking for a parking space for 10 minutes.
6. Microsoft _____ (sell) computer software since the early 1980s.
7. The students _____ (use) books in the library for their research project all semester.
8. People _____ (record) their thoughts on paper for many centuries.
9. Scientists _____ (think about) going to Mars for a number of years.
10. You _____ (use) my handouts in this class this semester.

Exercise 2.4.2: Present Perfect Progressive-Negative Forms

Fill in the blanks with the **negative** form of the Present Perfect Progressive. Use the verb in brackets (listed first). Spelling and punctuation count! USE A CONTRACTION whenever possible.

1. Leah _____ [come] to work lately.
2. The students _____ [achieve] high scores on their tests lately.
3. My mom and dad _____ [make] as much homemade food this month. They've been enjoying dining at restaurants.
4. The dog _____ [play] as much as he usually does. I wonder if she's sick.
5. We _____ [shop] yet this month. We've been saving our money.

Exercise 2.4.3: Writing Questions: Past Activity with Present Effects

Use the following to write a question in the Present Perfect Progressive (Continuous) tense for each situation.

Example: Mark looks sunburnt. (you / sit in the sun) "Have you been sitting in the sun?".

1. Sharon looks tired. (you / exercise)
2. Barney looks sick. (you / take some medicine)
3. Jack is asleep. (he / working hard all day)
4. Iris is typing. (she / write a letter)
5. Some monkeys are climbing a tree. (they / look for bananas)
6. The girls are talking. (they / chat for a long time)
7. Ted looks sad. (he / cry)
8. Laura is covered in flour. (she / bake)

Exercise 2.4.4: Combine the following sentences or ideas by using the Present Perfect Progressive Tense.

1. The men are building a fence now. They started building the fence early this morning.
The men have been building a fence since early this morning.
2. My wife is preparing for a party at our house tomorrow. She started preparing for the party yesterday.
3. My sons and I are trying to decide on a restaurant to go to for Mother's Day. We started talking about this last week.
4. I started writing this exercise about ten minutes ago.
5. The sun is shining today. In fact, the sun was shining on Friday and Saturday, and Sunday, too.
6. I am listening to some music as I write this exercise. It started playing about two minutes ago.
7. I put on a short-sleeved shirt this morning. I am still wearing it right now. I won't take it off until I get home.
8. My friend and his wife always argue. Last week they were arguing about where to go during summer vacation. They are still arguing about it today.
9. A baby is crying in another room. She started crying about ten minutes ago.
10. I started teaching at this college in 1989. I am still teaching here now.

Exercise 2.4.5: Present Perfect or Present Perfect Progressive

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of present perfect or present perfect progressive tense. If both answers are correct, write both answers.

1. I (listen) _____ to that new podcast several times this week.
2. She (think) _____ about starting a new job for a while now.
3. They (had) _____ this house since they moved here last year.
4. We (want) _____ to visit Japan for a long time.
5. He (work) _____ at the company for five years.
6. She (live) _____ in Paris since January.
7. I (run) _____ five miles, and I am exhausted.
8. They (write) _____ five emails to the customer service department so far.
9. I (study) _____ for my chemistry test all afternoon.
10. She (call) _____ her friend several times, but she hasn't answered yet.
11. We (hike) _____ in Big Bend National Park all day.
12. They (travel) _____ around Europe this summer.
13. He (feel) _____ much better since he started exercising regularly.
14. I (eat) _____ at this restaurant several times this year.
15. They (work) _____ on the project all week, but they aren't finished yet.
16. She (drive) _____ over 300 miles since the beginning of her trip.
17. Farah and Ali (look) _____ for a new apartment near downtown for weeks.
18. I (wait) _____ for my sister to arrive for two hours.

Exercises 1 and 2 from [We Love Teaching English](#) licensed under a Creative Commons [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#) license

Exercise 3 from Libertext licensed under a Creative Commons [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#).

Exercise 4 Original Work written with the assistance of ChatGPT

This page titled [2.4: Present Perfect Progressive](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

2.5: Past Perfect

Form of the Past Perfect

The past perfect is used when talking about an action in the past that happened before another action in the past. We often use the past perfect with expressions like 'for' or 'since', to describe the order in which past events happened.

Past perfect: positive and negative

I / You She / He / It We / You / They	'd (had) hadn't	seen him before. finished work by 5 o'clock.
---	--------------------	---

Past perfect: question and short answer

(Where) Had	I /You/ She / He / It/ We / You / They	been before?
Had he already left?	Yes, he had. No, he hadn't.	

Past Perfect: Be careful!

The past perfect is always used with one of the past tenses to indicate the sequence of past actions.

Uses of the Past Perfect

1. The Past Perfect is used to make clear that one action in the past happened before another action in the past.

- When I opened the fridge, I noticed that someone **had finished** the milk for breakfast.
- They entered the room and hardly recognized it as someone **had** completely **changed** the furniture!
- She went back home because she'd **forgotten** her keys.
- When it started raining, she **had** already **entered** the building.
- When we started the car, we realized that it **had run** out the gas.

2. We use the Past Perfect only when it is strictly necessary to clarify which past action happened first. Otherwise we use the Simple Past.

Notice the use of the Past Perfect and the Simple Past in the following sentences:

- When she got to the party, Tom **went** home. (First she arrived, then Tom left)
- When she got to the party, Tom **had gone** home. (First Tom left, then she arrived)

3. A note about "by the time" and "by": When a sentence that refers to past time events includes the phrase "by the time," simple past and past perfect are used in a specific pattern. Notice the use of the Past Perfect and the Simple Past in the following sentences:

- By the time we **got** to the airport, the flight **had already taken** off.
- I **had already eaten** dinner by the time my husband finally **got** home.

As you can see, when talking about past events, the "by the time" clause contains a verb in simple past, and the main clause contains a verb in past perfect.

When you use "by" + a point in time, it typically indicates that an action was completed before that specific point in the past. Therefore, you should use the past perfect tense of the verb.

- By 5 PM, I **had completed** the project and turned it in.

- When the storm hit, city workers **had cleared** all of the streets of debris by the end of week.

Using *Before* and *After*

BEFORE

Before can (optionally) be used in a sentence with **past perfect**. Note that there is no difference in meaning when using past or past perfect in these examples. **Before** expresses "**earlier than**" and is placed in front of the clause with the later event.

EARLIER THAN THIS (2ND EVENT)	SHE DID THIS (1ST EVENT)
Before Jill took her friends out to lunch,	she stopped at an ATM. she had stopped ¹ at an ATM.
SHE DID THIS (1ST EVENT)	EARLIER THAN THIS (2ND EVENT)
Jill stopped at an ATM. Jill had stopped ¹ at an ATM.	before she took her friends out to lunch,

AFTER

After can (optionally) be used in a sentence with **past perfect**. **After** expresses "**later than**" and is placed in front of the clause with the earlier event—it sets it aside in order to say that the next activity occurred later. Also see the next section for the use of **afterwards**. Note that there is no difference in meaning when using past or past perfect in these examples.

LATER THAN THIS (1ST EVENT)	SHE DID THIS (2ND EVENT)
After Jill stopped at an ATM After Jill had stopped ¹ at an ATM	she took her friends out to lunch.
SHE DID THIS (2ND EVENT)	LATER THAN THIS (1ST EVENT)
Jill took her friends out to lunch	after she stopped at an ATM. after she had stopped ¹ at an ATM.

Exercise 2.5.1: Simple Past or Past Perfect

Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with Simple Past or Past Perfect. **If both Simple Past and Past Perfect are possible, write both.**

- He _____ before the guards were _____. (escape/alert)
- The car _____ past and _____ the corner up ahead. (speed/turn)
- When the tournament _____, a winner was _____. (end/announce)
- After the crowd _____, we _____ the damage that _____ done. (part/see/be)
- The buses _____ running an hour before, so she _____ home in the rain. (stop/walk)
- Since they _____ their work, they _____ early. (finish/left)
- When the rain _____ finally _____, she took off her coat and _____ it. (stop/dry)
- By four o'clock our team _____ (complete) the report and submitted it to the manager.

9. By the time Juan arrived, the class _____ (start) and the students _____ (take) the quiz.

Exercise 2.5.2: Simple Past or Past Perfect

Select the response from the list that best completes the sentence. **Two answers may be correct.**

1. We (had to / had had to) go to the pharmacy late last night when my child (became / had become) sick.
2. The pharmacist (already left / had already left) for home by the time we (arrived / had arrived) there.
3. By the time we (returned / had returned) home, the baby's fever (already went / had already gone) down.
4. The next time the baby (had / had had) a fever, we (were / had been) better prepared.
5. Before we (had / had had) our baby, we (took / had taken) a baby-care course at the hospital.
6. After our baby (was / had been) born, we realized how easy our life (was/ had been) before.
7. Last night, I was thankful that the baby fell asleep early. However, I (just fell / had just fallen) asleep when he (woke up / had woken up) crying.
8. I (changed / had changed) his diaper and (gave / had given) him a bottle, then he (fell / had fallen) asleep peacefully.
9. My father, my mother, my sister and I (got into / had gotten into) my father's '54 Ford to go to Cordoba, where my parents (rented / had rented) a house up in the hills.
10. One morning after we (ate / had eaten) breakfast, my father (decided / had decided) that it was the perfect time for a family picture with the car, the house, and the scenery—all in one shot.
11. The three of us (started / had started) walking down the hill to look at the car, which (stopped / had stopped) at the bottom of hill.
12. However, when we (reached / had reached) the bottom of the hill, we (were / had been) surprised to see that the car (was / had been) still intact.
13. The two front wheels (were / had been) up on two big rocks as if somebody (placed / had placed) them there on purpose.
14. After my father (put / had put) away his camera, he (said / had said) , "I think I'm just going to enjoy this all with my own eyes for the rest of the trip."

"Before and After" and Exercise 2 from [Grammar Quizzes](#) by [Julie Sevastopoulos](#) licensed for use under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#).

This work is licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution - Non-Commercial - No-Derivatives 4.0 International License](#).

This page titled [2.5: Past Perfect](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

2.6: Past Perfect Progressive (Continuous) Tense

Form of the Past Perfect Progressive (Continuous)

The Past Perfect Continuous is formed by **had + been + -ing** form.

Past Perfect Progressive (Continuous): Positive and Negative

Subject	had (not) been	verb + ing.
I / You She / He / It We / You / They	had been hadn't been	studying.

Past Perfect Progressive (Continuous): Questions

Had	I /you she / he / it we / you / they	been swimming?
-----	--	----------------

Chart from [We Love Teaching English](#)

Use of the Past Perfect Progressive (Continuous)

The Past Perfect Progressive is used to talk about continuous or repeated actions that began and finished in the past before another action in the past.

The Simple Past tense is used for the second past action. Notice the timeline below:



Past Perfect Continuous Timeline” by Virginia McHardy, licensed under [CC BY-NC 4.0](#).

Common Time Markers used with The Past Perfect Continuous Tense and the Simple Past:

- when
- by the time
- before

Some examples are:

- I **had been painting** *for* three hours **by the time** the paint ran out.
- Carolina **had been doing** her homework *since* 4pm **when** the power went out.
- Hannah **had been making** dinner *before* her kids got home.
- Jason was tired because he **had been jogging**.

- The students **had been meeting** after class every week before they took the final exam.
- How long **had you been studying** Spanish before you moved to Madrid?

****** Just as a reminder, stative verbs cannot be used in progressive (continuous) tenses:

Linh had ~~been knowing~~ me since childhood when we stopped talking to each other.

Except where otherwise noted, “The Past Perfect Continuous Tense” by Sari Martin & Virginia McHardy is licensed under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#).

Exercise 2.6.1: Past Perfect Progressive-Affirmative Form

Fill in the missing words using affirmative past perfect progressive and the verb in brackets. Spelling and punctuation count!

1. I _____ all day so I didn't want to go out. (work)
2. Luis _____ for 10 hours when I woke him up. (sleep)
3. Dimitri and Athena _____ in Beijing for 3 years when he lost his job. (live)
4. We felt a bit ill because we _____ all day. (eat)
5. It _____, so the road was covered in water. (rain)
6. It _____ for 3 days when we were finally able to leave our home. (snow)

Exercise 2.6.2: Past Perfect Progressive-Negative Form

Fill in the missing words using the **negative** form of Past Perfect Progressive and the verb in brackets. Use the contraction when possible. Spelling and punctuation count!

1. I _____ there long when Minh quit. (not/work)
2. Even though Janine _____ anything, she was still too tired to go out. (do)
3. Hussein was in trouble with the teacher because he _____ to his classes. (go)
4. Linh _____ long when there was a knock at the door. (sleep)
5. Pham didn't feel healthy because he _____ to the gym. (go)

Exercise 2.6.3: Past Perfect Progressive-Interrogative (Question) Form

Fill in the missing words by forming the interrogative form of Past Perfect Progressive using the verb and subject in brackets.

1. When you got sick, _____ enough? (you/eat)
2. There was water everywhere inside. What _____ ? (the children/do)
3. _____ (he/use) his cell phone when the professor told him to pay attention?
4. How long _____ in Brazil when she found that job? (Julia/live)
5. How long _____ when the bus finally arrived? (we/wait)

Activity source: “Past Perfect Continuous Form Practice – Affirmative”, by Sari Martin, licensed under [CC BY-NC SA 4.0](#).

This page titled [2.6: Past Perfect Progressive \(Continuous\) Tense](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

2.7: Past Perfect vs Past Perfect Progressive

The **past perfect** and **past perfect progressive** (also called **past perfect continuous**) tenses both describe actions that happened before a point in the past, but they have different focuses:

Past Perfect Tense (had + past participle)

Use: To show that one action was completed before another action or time in the past.

Structure:

Subject + had + past participle

Focus: The **completion** of the action.

Example:

- *She had finished her homework before dinner.*
(= Homework was completely done before dinner started.)

Past Perfect Progressive Tense (had been + present participle)

Use: To emphasize the **duration** or **ongoing nature** of an action before another action or time in the past.

Structure:

Subject + had been + verb-ing

Focus: The **continuity** or **duration** of the action.

Example:

- *She had been studying for two hours when she stopped to eat dinner.*
(= She was studying continuously for 2 hours leading up to dinner.)

Comparison:

Sentence	Focus
<i>He had worked at the company for 10 years before he left.</i>	Focus on completed action (past perfect)
<i>He had been working at the company for 10 years before he left.</i>	Focus on duration (past perfect progressive)

Note: When using the verbs "work" and "live," either past perfect or past perfect progressive can be used with little difference in meaning.

Exercise 2.7.1: Fill in the blanks

Choose either **past perfect** (had + past participle) or **past perfect progressive** (had been + verb-ing) to complete each sentence.

 Hints:

- Use **past perfect** when you want to focus on the *completion* of an action.
 - Use **past perfect progressive** when you want to emphasize the *duration* or *ongoing nature* of an action before something else happened.
1. By the time the show started, we _____ (find) our seats.
 2. She _____ (work) on the project for weeks before she finally finished it.

3. They _____ (never try) sushi before the trip to Japan.
4. When the teacher entered the room, the students _____ (chat) loudly for several minutes.
5. The teacher was surprised that the student _____ (memorize) the entire poem
6. The ground was wet because it _____ (rain) all night.
7. We _____ (live) in the city for five years before moving to a small town.
8. He was exhausted because he _____ (run) for over an hour.
9. Before they got married, they _____ (know) each other for ten years.
10. I _____ (not hear) the news until I turned on the TV.
11. She _____ (drive) for hours when she realized she was lost.
12. My clothes were dirty because I _____ (work) in the garden all day.

Exercise 2.7.2: Sentence transformation

For each sentence, determine which action happened first. Then, rewrite each sentence using either **past perfect** or **past perfect progressive** for the action that happened first. Pay attention to what needs to be emphasized: the **completion** of the action or the **duration** of the activity.

1. She was cooking (first action) for two hours before the guests arrived.
 (Emphasize the ongoing action) She had been cooking for two hours before the guests arrived.
2. He took a shower after he cleaned the garage.
(Emphasize that cleaning was done before the shower)
3. We waited for half an hour when the concert finally started.
(Focus on the duration of waiting)
4. They already left when we reached the station.
(Focus on completed action)
5. I practiced piano every day before the recital.
(Focus on ongoing practice leading to an event)
6. He felt tired because he walked all day.
(Highlight continuous activity)
7. The kids played outside for three hours before dinner.
(Focus on duration)
8. She read all the documents before the meeting.
(Emphasize the completed action)
9. It snowed for hours before the roads were closed.
(Focus on the ongoing cause of the road closure)
10. They talked for hours before making a decision.
 (Emphasize duration of discussion)

 Exercise 2.7.3: Error Correction

Each sentence has an error with **past perfect** or **past perfect progressive** usage. Identify and correct it.

1. I had been saw that movie before we watched it together.
 2. She had finished dinner when the phone was ringing.
 3. They had work in the same company before they met.
 4. We had been waited for over an hour when the bus finally arrived.
 5. He had never visit New York before last year.
 6. The children had played outside all morning and they were tired.
 7. By the time we arrive, the meeting had already starting.
 8. I had been knowing him for a long time before we became partners.
 9. She had studied for hours when the fire alarm went off.
 10. The train had been leaving before we reached the station.
-

 Exercise 2.7.4: Create Sentences

Read the situations and make sentences from the words in parentheses. Use **Past Perfect** or **Past Perfect Progressive** forms.

Example: I was very tired when I arrived home (I / work / hard all day) =I had been working hard all day.

1. I was very happy when I received the letter. (I / wait / for my letter)
2. I was very angry when I got home yesterday. (my roommate/ leave the front door unlocked again)
3. I was energetic this morning. (I / drink / coffee /all morning)
4. He looked very handsome. (He / comb / his hair)
5. She was tired after work. (She / take care of patients/ all day)
6. She was soaked. (She / fall / in the river)
7. They were relieved. (They / escape / a landslide)
8. They were exhausted. (They / hike / ten miles / in the heat.)
9. We were so pleased. (We / hope / for that result)
10. We were very dirty. (We / work / in the garden)



Exercise 2.7.5 Past Perfect and Past Perfect Progressive: The Storm

Fill in the blanks with **Past Perfect** or **Past Perfect Progressive** forms of the verbs in parentheses

Example: Many people did not expect their houses to flood since their houses **had never flooded** before.

1. We were ready for the storm because we _____ (buy) supplies two days before it hit.
2. Her car got flooded because she _____ (leave) it in a low spot.
3. My car didn't get flooded because I _____ (park) it on higher ground.
4. Many people had to pay for all of the repairs to their homes because they _____ (buy / flood insurance/ not) before the storm.
5. Some people had to be rescued from their roofs. They _____ (climb) on their roofs so that the rescuers could see them.
6. When we went outside, the streets were flooded because it _____ (rain) for three days.
7. By the time the storm was over, thousands of people _____ (lost) their homes.
8. Some families _____ (wait) for hours before they were rescued.
9. One man climbed on the roof of his car because he _____ (drive) into high water.
10. Some people had to leave their homes because their homes _____. (flood /already)
11. The debris stayed on the street in front of people's houses for a long time because no one _____ (pick) it up yet.
12. The country _____ (see /never) such a terrible loss of property in any previous storms.

Exercise 2-Original Content by Allyson Marceau

Videos and Other Resources

Practice the Past Perfect and Past Perfect Progressive Tenses

- Watch [the Nepal Earthquake video](#) again. Write three sentences using the past perfect continuous. The earthquake hit at 11:52. What had people been doing when the earthquake hit?
- Read [the article "Alaska Earthquake"](#) again. Had Kirsten Arnold experienced an earthquake before the one in Alaska? Where?
- Write three sentences. What are some things you hadn't tried before you started this class?

Exercise 2.7.1 to 2.7.4 from [We Love Teaching English](#) is licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution - Non-Commercial - No-Derivatives 4.0 International License](#).

This page titled [2.7: Past Perfect vs Past Perfect Progressive](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

3: Modals

3.1: Modal Verbs Expressing Degrees of Certainty

3.2: Past Modals of Degrees of Certainty

3.3: Should Have

3.4: Comparing Could Have and Should Have

3.5: Progressive Modals

This page titled [3: Modals](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

3.1: Modal Verbs Expressing Degrees of Certainty

Introduction - Modal Auxiliary Verbs

Modal Auxiliary Verbs are a very rich area of the English language. They are used with great frequency and with a wide range of meanings. All of them can express degree of **certainty**, **probability** or **possibility** of an event. But they can also express ideas such as **willingness** and **ability**, **permission** and **refusal**, **obligation** and **prohibition**, **suggestion**, **necessity**, **promise** and **intention**. Here are some of the common modal verbs:

can	could	may	might
would	will	should /ought to	must

Modal Verbs Expressing Certainty, Probability or Possibility

In order of certainty:

WILL and **WON'T** are used to predict a **future event** or **action** which are seen as **certain**. The truth or certainty of what is asserted is more or less taken for granted.

- I **will** see you later.
- His latest book **will be** out next month.

MUST is used to assert what we infer or conclude to be the most logical or rational interpretation of a situation or event. As we do not have all the facts, it is less certain than *will*.

- He walked across the Sahara desert! You **must be** joking!.
- Joe **must have** the keys to the office. He entered without a problem.

SHOULD expresses what may reasonably be expected to happen. Expectation means believing that things are or will be as we want them to be. This use of **SHOULD** carries the meaning of "*if everything goes according to the plan, then something should happen*"; therefore it doesn't suggest negative or unpleasant ideas.

- You have worked hard. You **should pass** the exam.
- If the flight is on time, he **should arrive** in Jakarta early this morning.

MAY and **MIGHT** and **COULD** express the possibility that something will happen in the future or is already happening.

- We **may go** to Spain this year. We haven't decided yet.
- A: "Where's Sandra?" B: "I don't know. She **may be taking** a bath".
- I **might not be** back in time for dinner, so don't wait for me.
- They **might be eating** dinner now. We should call them later.
- Mark **could be** at the park. He said he was going to go for a run.
- We **could stay** with Jessica in London (it's possible, if she's there)

Be careful with *could*. It also has the meaning of **past ability** such as in this example:

- He **could** ride a bike when he was 5 years old.

Could not is **not** used to express a future possibility. The negative of *could* is **MIGHT NOT**.

- It **might not** be right.
- He **might not** be working today.

The negative form of must is **CAN'T** or **COULDN'T**. Both express a near impossibility. *Couldn't* has a similar meaning to *can't*, but only slightly weaker.

- Joe **can't** be in his office. He just started a meeting a few minutes ago.
- She **can't** have a ten-year-old daughter! She's only twenty-five herself!
- He **couldn't** be working right now. He went on vacation yesterday.

OUGHT TO, as well as *SHOULD* are used to talk about an expectation that something is happening, or will happen.

- If the flight was on time, he **should/ought to** arrive in Paris early this morning.
- The builders **should/ought to** finish by the end of the week.
- Maria **should** be studying* right now.

*Should and ought to are also used to express advice. The meaning can be ambiguous (unclear) as in this example.

Summary: Degrees of Possibility

We can express certainty with modals of possibility. If you are 100% certain, then no modal is necessary, but if you're almost certain then use the modal *must*. If you're less than 50% certain, then use *may*, *might*, or *could*. If you are 95% certain that it is not true, use *can't* or *couldn't*. When your teacher is not in the classroom, you might infer these possibilities in **present time**:

She *is* sick. I know because she announced it in BlackBoard. (100% certain)

She *must* be sick. She was sick yesterday. (95% certain)

She *should be* in her office. Let's go find her. (Expectation)

She *could/might/may* be stuck in traffic. (less than 50% certain)

She *couldn't/can't* be sick. She never gets sick. (95% certain of impossibility.)

Note: We do not use **could not** or **cannot** to express a certainty of impossibility. Only the contracted form is used.

 For more information on this topic, watch these videos: [Modals of Possibility- May, Might, and Could](#) and [Modal of Certainty-Present](#)

Exercise 3.1.1-Inference Practice

Below is a list of situations. Give one sentence with *must* for a strong inference (guess) and write another sentence with a less likely possibility. Use present modal verb forms. **Use the verbs: be or have.** Use the example to guide you.

Example: Your teacher's eyes are red.

95% certain: She *must* have allergies.

Less than 50% certain: She *might* have an eye disease.

1. Class started at 8:00. You arrived at 8:30 and the classroom is empty.
2. You see a box on your front steps.
3. There's a different teacher sitting at the teacher's desk today.
4. Your best friend isn't answering your texts.
5. Your classmate is coughing.
6. You hear a loud noise in your garage.
7. You hear an ambulance at your neighbor's house.
- 8.. Your son received a high grade on his math test.

Exercise 3.1.2: Rewrite the Sentence

Rewrite the sentences with the choices given and then check your answers below.

Example:

Perhaps she works: A. may B. could

Answer

A. She may work B. She could work.

1. Maybe he plays the piano.

A. might B. may

A. _____ B. _____

2. Perhaps she sees us.

A. may B. might

A. _____ B. _____

3. This street is unfamiliar. It appears like we are lost.

A. must

A. _____

4. Maybe she lives here

A. might B. may

A. _____ B. _____

5. I believe he is in his office.

A. should

A. _____

6. It is possible that she is not home.

A. may B. might

A. _____

7. It is not possible for her to be a teacher.

A. can't B. couldn't

A. _____ B. _____

8. I believe she is working now. (Use the present progressive form of a modal --Be+Ving)

A. should

A. _____

Page from [We Love Teaching English](#) licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution - Non-Commercial - No-Derivatives 4.0 International License](#).

This page titled [3.1: Modal Verbs Expressing Degrees of Certainty](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

3.2: Past Modals of Degrees of Certainty

Modals of Possibility and Probability for Past Situations

Must, may, might, can't and **couldn't** are used with a **present perfect** verb form to show how certain a speaker is that a past situation happened or didn't happen.

Affirmative

Formula: MODAL + HAVE + PAST PARTICIPLE (to show how certain the speaker is that something happened)

- **Must have + past participle** shows a great deal of certainty that something happened, but there is still some doubt in the speaker's mind. He/she is not 100% certain. For example:

The students did well on the test. They **must have studied** hard.

(There are other possible reasons why the students did well on the test. It might have been very easy, or they might have already learned the material. The speaker uses **must have studied hard** to show that he/she thinks this is the most logical reason they did so well.) For example:

I've called Jim several times, but he doesn't answer. He **must have turned** off his phone.

(The speaker believes this is the most logical reason why Jim doesn't answer the phone. However, other reasons are possible. He might not have heard the phone, or he might not have wanted to talk to anyone.)

- **May, might** and **could** convey the idea that a speaker is only 50% or less certain that something happened. The use of **could** implies a little more certainty. For example:

My wife wasn't at home when I arrived. She **may (might, could) have gone** shopping.

(The speaker doesn't know for sure that his wife went shopping. However, it is his best guess.)

Negative

Formula: MODAL + NOT + BASE VERB + PAST PARTICIPLE (to show how certain the speaker is that something didn't happen)

- **Can't** or **couldn't have + past participle** shows that the speaker is very certain something didn't happen. For example:

You **couldn't have seen** Susan at the party. She stayed home last night.

(The speaker is certain that the listener didn't see Susan because she knew Susan wasn't there. Use contractions, not **could not** or **cannot** in this context.)

- **May** or **might not have + past participle** shows that the speaker is 50% or less certain that something didn't happen. For example:

There was a strange light in the sky last night. Leon was sure it was a plane, but I'm not so sure. It **may not have been** a plane. It might have been a UFO (Unidentified Flying Object).

An appropriate modal + have is used in most short answers. However, if the question has a be verb, the formula for responding is **appropriate modal + have been**. For example:

Person A: Has Jennifer decided which courses she's going to take next semester?

Person B: I'm not sure. She **might have**.

A Note about *Must*:

- As mentioned above, *Must* can be used to express strong certainty about the present or past:

You **must be** tired. You worked very hard today.

Carlos **must have studied** hard. He got an "A" on the test.

- Must** can also be used to express necessity or obligation:

Students **must study** in order to pass their classes.

- In this meaning, the past is expressed with *had to*:

Carlos **had to study** for his math test last night.

Exercise 3.2.1: Rewrite the Sentence-Past Modals

Rewrite the sentences with the choices given.

Example: Perhaps she jumped

A. may have

B. could have, could've

Answer: A. She may have jumped. B. She could have jumped.

1. Maybe he said that. She can't remember now.

A. might have

B. could have

A. _____ B. _____

2. Perhaps she saw us.

A. could have

B. might have

A. _____ B. _____

3. I'm pretty sure we took the wrong street.

A. must have

A. _____

4. It is not possible to have happened.

A. couldn't have

A. _____

5. I wish you had seen it. It was spectacular!

A. should have

A. _____

6. It is possible to have happened but not likely.

A. could have

A. _____

8. It was possible for him to go but he didn't.

A. could have

A. _____

inference (N) – something that you think is true, based on information that you have

See [Should /Must](#) and [Must / Must have](#).

Also see [Modal Review – Obligation](#).

This page titled [3.2: Past Modals of Degrees of Certainty](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

3.3: Should Have

Should Have

Should Have can be used to express failed expectations, strong probabilities, past advice that wasn't taken, and regret. These three charts will help you to understand these meanings.

1) Failed Expectation

SHOULD HAVE		
<i>Should have</i> expresses a past expectation that was not met. What we normally expect did not happen. A <i>should have</i> clause is often followed by a <i>but</i> clause.		
MODAL	HAVE + PAST PARTICIPLE	REST OF SENTENCE
The movie should	have been	available last week. (but it wa
The class should	have started	by now. (but it hasn't)
I should	have bought	my mother something for Mo (but I didn't)

Should Have

2) Strong Probability (We don't know if our expectation was met or not.)

Should have also expresses a **strong probability** that an expectation in a past situation has been met. In this case, we believe that our expectation has been met, but we are not sure. We often use this with the expression "by now." The past is expressed with **should+have+past participle** (*perfect tense verb form*)

SHOULD HAVE + PAST PARTICIPLE

A: Daniela's flight **should have arrived** by now. (We don't know if it has arrived.)

B: I'll check the Arrivals and Departures board to see.

A: Mary **should have found out** if she got the job. Her interview was a few days ago. (We don't know if she has found out.)

B: Let's call her and ask!

A: Leah **should have had** her baby by now. She went into labor several hours ago. (We don't know if she has had her baby.)

B: I'm sure her mother will call when it is born.

Note: In the above examples, "should have" is ambiguous. It could have more than one meaning. Either we know that the expectation has NOT been met like in Chart 1, or we think it has been met, but we are not sure like in Chart 2. The context should tell the reader or listener which one is true.

Should Have

3) Past Advice or Regret

SHOULD HAVE + PAST PARTICIPLE

Should have expresses advice that comes too late, after a specific event has already occurred. It can also express regret or criticism about a certain action that was or was not taken.

You **should have tried** ordering your textbooks online to save money. (but you didn't)

He **should have asked** one of his professors for a recommendation. (but he didn't)

She **shouldn't have talked** on her cell phone when she was in the movie theater. (but she did)

I **should have studied** harder for the test. (I didn't study hard enough)

We **shouldn't have bought** such an expensive car. (but we did)

Also see [Could / Should Have](#)

Common Mistakes

Error and Solution

ERROR

*We *should had left* earlier.

Solution

We **should have** left earlier. (Use the "perfect" verb form, which does not change to a past form.)

► Show Grammar Notes and Works Cited

Exercise 3.3.1

Identify the meaning of *should have*. More than one meaning may be correct.

1. Larry *should have been* at the meeting. We really needed his input.

failed expectation strong probability past advice regret

2. I *should have gotten* up earlier. I was late for my exam.

failed expectation strong probability past advice regret

3. The flight *should have arrived* by now, but it's not here. Maybe it was delayed in Dallas.

failed expectation strong probability past advice regret

4. The flight *should have arrived* by now. We'd better hurry up and get to the gate!

failed expectation strong probability past advice regret

5. That salesperson *should have been* more polite.

failed expectation strong probability past advice regret

6. The students *shouldn't have used* their cell phones during class.

failed expectation strong probability past advice regret

7. Linh *should have passed* the test. She studied so hard.

failed expectation strong probability past advice regret

Exercise 3.3.2

Consider the following situations and then tell what the people **should or shouldn't have done**.

1. The man lost all his money at the race track betting on horses. Ans: He shouldn't have bet all his money on horses.

2. The man's wife gave him some of her money so that he could gamble again.

3. My car broke down on the highway because the engine was low on oil.

4. My brother lost his job because he argued with his boss and told his boss that he quit.

5. While I was driving to school, I saw an accident in which a man drove through a red light while speeding.

6. My grandfather smoked all his life and died of lung cancer.

7. My friend borrowed \$1,000 from me and never paid me back.

8. Yesterday was my mother's birthday and I didn't buy her a present because I forgot it was her birthday.

9. Yesterday at work, my friend felt very bad because he had gotten drunk the night before and he had a very bad hangover in the morning.

10. I didn't go to bed until late last night because I put off doing my homework.

Exercise 3.3.3

A Faulty Machine

A. Read for Errors

Do you think we should to take this DVD player back to the store where we bought it? It plays the picture out of sync * with the sound. It should have worked fine. I was watching it this morning and it was all right. I want to take it back because the salesman should tell us about that problem, but he didn't. The instructions say that we should restarting the machine to fix the audio-video sync problem. I tried three times! It should worked, but it didn't ! I called them and they told me that I should return it to the company that makes it in its original box. However, I didn't keep the original box. I threw it away, but I guess I should know to keep it. I'm not sure what I can do now.

**out of sync* – not synchronized or matched together; not having the same timing

B. Edit for errors.

Edit the sentence(s) in the space below each question. Look for past modals. (could have/should have+past participle) and simple modals (should/could) Some sentences may not have any errors.

11. Do you think we should to take this DVD player back to the store where we bought it?

Edit 11:

12. It should have worked fine. I was watching it this morning and it was all right.

Edit 12:

13. I want to take it back because the salesman should tell us about that problem, but he didn't.

Edit 13:

14. The instructions say that we should restarting the machine to fix the audio-video sync problem.

Edit 14:

15. It should worked, but it didn't !

Edit 15:

16. I called them and they told me that I should return it to the company that makes it.

Edit 16:

17. I threw it away, but I guess I should know to keep it.

Edit 17:

Exercises adapted from [Grammar-Quizzes](#) by [Julie Sevastopoulos](#) licensed for use under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#). Edited for B2 level.

This page titled [3.3: Should Have](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

3.4: Comparing Could Have and Should Have

Could Have — Lost Opportunities

As we saw in a previous sections, **Could Have** can be used to express possibility. This section reviews this meaning of **Could Have** and adds a new one-Lost Opportunities

Could have is often used to discuss options that were not taken--lost opportunities. We all know the story of the terrible tragedy of the sinking of the Titanic.

Note the possible opportunities that existed before the sinking of the Titanic followed by sentences that describe what "could have" happened but didn't.

OPTION

- 1) Offer more life jackets.
- 2) Hold emergency practices.
- 3) Keep in contact with other ships in the area.

HYPOTHETICAL STATEMENT-(Options that were not taken)

The owners **could have supplied** more life jackets. (but they didn't)

The captain **could have held** emergency practices. (but he didn't)

The captain **could have radioed** other ships in the area to ask about iceberg sightings. (but he didn't)

Could Have--Possibility

We can use **Could Have** to discuss possibility or speculation. It expresses a low degree of certainty about events in the past.

STATEMENT OF PAST POSSIBILITY ("Speculation" As described in Section 2)

The captain **could have refused** help.

Maybe he did, maybe he didn't.

The Titanic **could have been** off course, too far north.

Maybe it was, maybe it wasn't.

The captain of the ship *Californian* **could have ignored** the call.

Maybe he did, maybe he didn't.

COMPARE: HYPOTHETICAL STATEMENT (Options that were not taken)

The captain **could have refused** to pilot the ship.....*but he didn't.*

The captain **could have held** emergency practices.....*but he didn't.*

The White Star Line **could have supplied** more boats.....*but they didn't.*

Should Have

As mentioned earlier, *Should Have* can be used to express regret or criticism about something that we wish we (or someone else) hadn't done. It can be described as late advice--advice given after-the-fact. Note the examples of good advice followed by the expressions of criticism in the sentences that use *Should Have*.

ADVICE

- 1) Include more lifeboats and better deployment (lowering them)
- 2) Require faster emergency response from other ships in the area.
- 3) Be more watchful in shipping lanes where icebergs exist.

HYPOTHETICAL CAUSE - EFFECT STATEMENTS EXPRESSING CRITICISM

The owners **should have had** enough space in the lifeboats for everyone on board.

The crew **should have known** how to lower the boats even if the ship was tipping over.

The captains of the *Californian* and *Carpathia* **should have had** their radios on.

They **should have responded** to distress flares that were shot in the sky.

The captain **should have listened** to earlier reports of icebergs in the area.

See [Could / Should - Grammar Notes](#).

Exercise 3.4.1

Opportunities Not Taken



Collision with Iceberg

Select the response from the list that best completes the sentence. If both answers are correct, select both.

1. **White Star Lines spent more money on advertising than safety.**

The ship owners (could have spent / should have spent) less money on publicity and more on safety.

2. **Reports of iceberg sightings in northern shipping lanes had been received before their departure.**

The captain (could have cruised/ should have cruised) farther south.

3. The captain couldn't stop in time, so he turned the ship away from the iceberg. Because of this, the iceberg destroyed flotation compartments on the right side of the ships.

The captain (could have steered / should have steered) directly into the iceberg, but the impact would have injured passengers.

impact (N) – crash

4. The captain waited to see if the flotation compartments could keep the ship up, and he lost valuable time.

The captain (couldn't have reacted / shouldn't have reacted) so slowly after the crash.

5. Before leaving, crew members were required to practice lowering lifeboats, but they lowered only two of the sixteen, and not all crew members were present yet.

The captain (should have held / could have held) emergency drills lowering all the lifeboats with all the crew members.

6. Californian: "We are stopped and surrounded by ice."

The captain (should have slowed / could have slowed) the ship when a nearby ship *Californian* radioed that they were surrounded by ice floes.

7. Staff, crew and equipment were hastily brought together at the last minute to meet the departure date of the Titanic's first voyage.

The company (shouldn't have waited / couldn't have waited) until the last minute. They (could have changed / should have changed) the departure date.

hastily (adv.) – quickly, not well put together or thought out

8. The crew (shouldn't have trusted / couldn't have trusted) or believed their ship to be "unsinkable".

9. The passengers (shouldn't have known / couldn't have known) that it would be their last voyage.

"How the Titanic Worked" <http://adventure.howstuffworks.com/titanic.htm>

[Grammar-Quizzes](#) › [Verb Phrases](#) › [Verb Groups](#) › [Modals](#) › Could have vs. Should have Grammar Quizzes by [Julie Sevastopoulos](#) is licensed for use under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#).

This page titled [3.4: Comparing Could Have and Should Have](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

3.5: Progressive Modals

Modals of Possibility and Probability with Progressive Tenses

We can use present progressive modal forms to make a guess or draw a logical conclusion about an ongoing activity in progress at the present time; that is, during the time of speaking.

Present Progressive Form of Modals

Formula: SUBJECT + APPROPRIATE MODAL + BE + ING VERB

Person A: What's all that noise?

Person B: The neighbor's son is in a rock band. They **must be practicing**.

Past Progressive Form of Modals

We also use modals of possibility or probability to make guesses or logical conclusions about past activities.

Formula: SUBJECT + APPROPRIATE MODAL + HAVE BEEN + ING VERB

Person A: I didn't hear a sound when I passed by the children's room earlier.

Person B: They must have been sleeping.

Progressive Modals-Usage

Progressive modals are similar to simple modals in meaning.

- **Must** shows that a speaker is 90-95% certain that an action is or was in progress.
 - Sara **must be sleeping**. Her light is off, and it is very quiet in her room.
 - Linh **must have been swimming**. Her hair is wet, and she is wearing a bathing suit.
- **Could, may and might** show that a speaker is 50% or less certain that an action is or was in progress.
 - They aren't here yet and it's getting late. They **might not be coming**.
 - John didn't come to the party last night. He **may have been working**
- **Couldn't and can't** show that the speaker believes strongly that a situation is not taking place. For example:
 - It's noon. George went to bed at 10:00 last night. He **can't still be sleeping!**
 - Juan **couldn't have been running** in the race. He broke his leg last week.
- **Might and could** are used in questions regarding the possibility or probability of actions taking place. However, may and must are not.
 - **Correct:** Could Tom be studying now? Could Fatima have been working last night?
 - **Incorrect:** May Tom be studying now? Must Fatima have been working last night?

For most short answers, a modal alone is used. However, if the question includes a **be** verb, a modal with be is required.

Person A: Is Simon joining us?

Person B: I'm not sure. He might be.

Note about Non-Action (Stative) Verbs:

Remember that not all verbs are used in the progressive (progressive) form. are not used in progressive forms. Some types of non-progressive verbs are:

- Non-action verbs describing conditions that aren't expected to change (seem, appear, cost, weigh, have, be, etc.)
- Verbs of the senses (hear, smell, see, taste, etc.)
- Verbs of ownership (have, belong, own, possess)

- Verbs that convey feelings (love, hate, like, hate, prefer, want, etc.)

Exercise 3.5.1: Choose the Correct Sentence Completion

1. PERSON A: Where's Danny

PERSON B: He has an important exam tomorrow, so he _____

- A. maybe is studying.
- B. can't be studying.
- C. must be studying.

2. I wanted to talk to the professor about my grade, but she wasn't in his office. I guess she _____ at that time.

- A. might be teaching another class.
- B. must have taught another class.
- C. maybe was teaching another class.
- D. might have been teaching another class.

3. Although it's sunny and dry now, I see several people carrying umbrellas. It _____

- A. must be raining earlier.
- B. might have been raining earlier.
- C. must rained earlier.

4. Bob's teenage daughter always wears pink clothing. She even painted her bedroom pink. She _____

- A. must to like pink.
- B. must like pink.
- C. might like pink.
- D. might be liking pink.

5. PERSON A: I was raised in a large city.

PERSON B: That _____

- A. must be interesting.
- B. must have to be interesting.
- C. maybe was interesting.
- D. must have been interesting.

6. PERSON A: The children are very quiet. I wonder what they are up to. (To "be up to" means to be doing something, often something you shouldn't be doing)

PERSON B: I don't know. They _____

- A. are sleeping.
- B. could be sleeping.
- C. could have been sleeping.

7. James and Betty went to Hawaii on Friday for a two-week vacation. Right now, they _____

- A. might relax on a sunny beach.
- B. must be relaxing on a sunny beach.
- C. must relax on a sunny beach.
- D. maybe are relaxing on a sunny beach.

8. I can't find my wallet. I _____

- A. am leaving it at home.
- B. must left it at home
- C. may have left it at home.

9. PERSON A: Many people were laughing throughout the movie.
PERSON B: It _____ very funny.
- A. maybe was
 - B. may been
 - C. must have been
 - D. could have been
10. I'm not sure, but someone _____ a package for you earlier today. You should check the front door just in case.
- A. might have left
 - B. must have left
 - C. maybe left
 - D. might be leaving

Explanation and Exercise 1 adapted from [UVIC Study Zone](#) licensed for use under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#).

Exercise 3.5.2: Answering Questions

Answer the following questions using progressive modals.

1. Where do you think you might you be living in the year 2030?
2. What will you be doing next Saturday afternoon?
3. What might your best friend be doing right now?
4. What should all of the students in this class be thinking about now?
5. What might you be doing at this time a year from now?
6. What could you be doing right now if you weren't in school?
7. What might your relatives be doing in your home country right now?

Exercise 3 adapted from *Grammar the Way You Like It* by Don Bissonnet licensed for use under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#)

Exercise 3.5.3: Present and Past Progressive Modals

Fill in the blanks with the correct progressive form of the modal verbs:

1. Given the weather forecast, we _____ (may / drive) to work in the rain this afternoon.
2. It's so noisy outside! The children _____ (must/play) in the yard.
3. I don't know why Mike is not in his office. It's 10am, and he _____ (should / work) now.
4. Her eyes were red when she came in. She _____ (must / cry).
5. There's a big game tonight. The team _____ (should / practice) for the big game at this moment.
6. Luis and Carla are still at work. They _____ (might /work) late on the project since they have to turn it in tomorrow.
7. Since she was so focused, she _____ (must /study) for her final exam last night
8. Lisa has a can of paint and paintbrushes in her living room. She _____ (must / paint) her house.
9. They _____ (might / wait) for the bus now if they missed the train.
10. Larry said he would cook tonight. He _____ (should / cook) dinner for us right now.

Exercise 4 Original work by Allyson Marceau

This page titled [3.5: Progressive Modals](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

4: Passive

[4.1: Passive-Form and Usage](#)

[4.1.1: Practice with Passive](#)

[4.1.2: Passive Voice Exercises-Various Tenses](#)

[4.1.3: Passive Exercises- Modal Verbs](#)

This page titled [4: Passive](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

4.1: Passive-Form and Usage

The Passive

Reading: **Read the four paragraphs and pay attention to the differences in verb forms. The reading illustrates the differences in form and usage of active voice and passive voice.**

"Patient" as the Subject (Active Voice)

Focus on the person or thing that undergoes the action

MOTHER: the personal birthing experience is the focus of this narration; *active voice*

Last night, I gave birth to a baby girl at home with the help of my doctor. She weighed nine pounds. After the birth, I held her in my arms. I showed her to my family. I was relieved¹ that my baby was healthy. I received flowers and gifts for the baby.

"Baby" as the Subject (Passive Voice)

THE FATHER: the new baby is the focus of this narration; *passive voice*

Last night, my daughter *was born*. The baby girl *was delivered* with the help of a doctor. She weighed nine pounds. The baby girl *was placed* in her mother's arms soon after the birth and then *given* to me a little later. She *was checked* by the doctor and found to be in good health.

"The Delivery" as the Subject (Active Voice)

DOCTOR: the delivery experience is the focus of this narration; *active voice*

Last night, I delivered a baby girl. The infant weighed nine pounds and ten ounces—big! I examined the baby and I found her to be in good health. After the birth, I left the baby in the care of her parents, and I registered the birth for them.

"Sister" as the Subject (Active Voice)

SISTER: the (mother's) sister is the focus of this narration; *active voice*

Last night, my sister had her baby girl. She gave birth at home with the help of her doctor. Her baby weighed nine pounds. My sister held her newborn baby soon after the birth. She proudly showed us her new baby. She was relieved that her baby was healthy. She received flowers and gifts for the baby.

Active vs. Passive: *These charts will help you to understand these differences.*

ACTIVE

In an active clause, the focus is on the person or thing that takes action. The *doer* or *agent* occupies the subject position of the clause, and *receiver*, the person or thing that undergoes (is affected by) the action, is placed after the verb in the object position.

SUBJECT/ AGENT (DOER)	ACTIVE VERB	OBJECT /RECEIVER OF THE ACTION
My sister	had	a baby.
A doctor	helped	her.
The parents	invited	us for a short visit.
We	brought	them gifts.
A birth	happens (intransitive verb)	(in my family.)

PASSIVE

In writing or speaking, we use the passive to change the focus to a particular person or topic. When the *patient* is the focus, the verb is marked with a passive verb form. *If needed*, the *agent* (the doer of the action) can be included in a by-phrase. Sometimes it is not needed.

SUBJECT	VERB	THE REST OF THE SENTENCE
RECEIVER OF ACTION	"TO BE" + PAST PARTICIPLE	AGENT (DOER OF THE ACTION)
An infant	was born	(to my sister.) (optional, not needed)
She	was helped	(by the doctor.)
We	were invited	(by the parents.)
Gifts	were brought	to them (by us.)

Transitive and Intransitive Verbs

To create a passive form, the verb must be transitive. That is, it must take an object. When a verb does not take an object, it is called intransitive. Sentences with intransitive verbs cannot be converted to passive voice.

A birth	<i>happened</i> (Intransitive Verb)	(no passive form)
The baby	is sleeping soundly (Intransitive Verb)	(no passive form)

Active vs Passive: Compare the active voice and the passive voice using different tenses in the following examples. **To form the passive, use the form of "to be" that corresponds with the desired tense followed by the past participle of the main verb.**

ACTIVE	PASSIVE Form of "to be" + past participle
PRESENT	
People send gifts to new parents.	New parents are sent gifts.
PRESENT PROGRESSIVE	
People are sending our best wishes.	Best wishes are being sent .
PRESENT PERFECT	
We have sent flowers daily.	Flowers have been sent daily.
PRESENT PERFECT PROGRESSIVE	
The parents have been sending pictures all day.	*Pictures have been being¹ sent sent all day. <i>[not used]</i> Pictures have been sent to us throughout the day
PAST	
My brother sent (them) a car seat.	A car seat was sent (to them) by my brother.
PAST PROGRESSIVE	
Friends were sending baby clothes.	Baby clothes were being sent by friends.
PAST PERFECT	
The parents had sent a message before the baby's birth.	A message had been sent immediately before the baby's birth.
FUTURE	
The parents will send a baby announcement to friends.	A baby announcement will be sent to friends (by the parents.)
The grandparents are also going to send gifts.	Gifts are also going to be sent by the grandparents.
INFINITIVE	
The father intends to help the new mother a lot.	The mother hopes to be helped by the father.

Reading and charts from [Grammar Quizzes](#) by [Julie Sevastopoulos](#) licensed for use under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#)

Passive Modals

The modal verbs use the passive voice the same way that all other tenses in English do. An **Active** sentence with a modal verb can be changed into a **Passive** sentence by making the subject of the active sentence the object of the passive sentence **AND** the object of the active sentence the subject of the passive sentence. For example:

- The publisher will give the students a discount on textbooks.
 - A discount on textbooks will be given to the students. (by the publisher).
- Snow might delay some flights over the Christmas break.
 - Some flights might be delayed over the Christmas break (by snow).
- He must have eaten the donuts.
 - The donuts must have been eaten by him.

Why Use the Passive?

- Active voice is usually how verbs are used in a sentence when the subject of the sentence performs an action, and sometimes an object receives the result of the action.

Example: The dog chased the cat.

- Passive voice changes the object of a sentence into the subject and also changes the verb form with it. This is by adding a form of “be” and a past participle. Sometimes the subject of the active sentence is included in a “by phrase”.

Example: The cat was chased by the dog.

- The two example sentences here have the same meaning, but the emphasis is different. Although many English teachers advise against using passive voice, there are many reasons it is a useful grammatical structure.

When do we use the passive?

- **Situation One:** When the “agent” is obvious or unimportant:

Both English and French are spoken in Canada.

Your package was delivered at 6:30 pm.

- **Situation Two:** When the "agent" is unknown.

Has the truth been hidden from us?

Three million dollars were stolen from the bank.

- **Situation Three:** When we want to focus on the receiver of the action rather than the doer, or agent.

Thousands of homes were destroyed by the hurricane.

- **Situation Four:** When we want to avoid blaming someone or taking responsibility.

Mom's favorite dish has been broken.

“Mistakes were made” is a famous quote by President Ronald Reagan.

- **Situation Five:** When we want to focus more on the action rather than the subject doing the action, such as giving instructions or explaining processes.

Yogurt is formed when milk is fermented with bacteria.

The samples must be stored in the refrigerator.

Where do we often find the passive?

Passive is often used in writing in these disciplines:

- **Lab reports:**

In the study, 300 participants were given a questionnaire about their eating habits.

- **News reports:**

Three people were killed and one child was badly injured in a collision between two cars on Highway 190 yesterday.

- **Scientific research:**

Animal studies have been used for decades to understand various physiological and behavioral phenomena, including the factors involved in drug addiction.

- **Industry and Agriculture:**

The coffee beans are then ground into a powder before being brewed.

Note: In general, passive voice is more often used in writing about topics that do not focus on people or receivers.

Charts from [Grammar Quizzes](#) by [Julie Sevastopoulos](#) licensed for use under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#)

When do we use the passive?, Where do we often find the passive? adapted for regional use, from [It's All Greek to Me!](#) Copyright © 2018 by Charity Davenport is licensed under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#)

Why Use the Passive? from [UVIC Study Zone](#) licensed for use under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#)

This page titled [4.1: Passive-Form and Usage](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

4.1.1: Practice with Passive

Exercises for Practice

Exercise 4.1.1

Discuss the following passive sentences and the sentences above in the example with a classmate. Why did the writers choose the passive voice? Choose the number of the correct situations or situations (1 to 5). More than one answer may be correct.

- 1) The “agent” is obvious or unimportant
- 2) The "agent" is unknown.
- 3) We want to focus on the receiver of the action rather than the doer, or agent.
- 4) We want to avoid blaming someone or taking responsibility.
- 5) We want to focus more on the action rather than the subject doing the action, such as giving instructions or explaining processes.

1. _____ The First Tennessee Bank was robbed last night at 3:45 am.
2. _____ In this experiment, the eggs were placed in vinegar overnight.
3. _____ After that, chunks of graphite (a soft, dark mineral) and clay are placed inside a huge rotating drum. Large rocks inside the drum crush the graphite and clay into a fine powder. Then water is added, and the mixture is blended in the drum for up to three days.
4. _____ All the fruit in the pantry is covered in mold.
5. _____ Somehow the window had been broken.

Exercise 4.1.2-Writing Sentences in Active and Passive Voice

For each of the following topics , write one active and one passive sentence in the numbered answers below. **Do not change an active sentence to a passive sentence. Use different ideas for the active and the passive sentences.** You may want to do some research. Include links for any sources you have used. (The first one has been done for you.)

1. The history of the banana
2. Red pandas
3. A traditional American wedding
4. The formation of rainbows
5. Emojis
6. Chocolate: from tree to store

1. The history of the banana: Active: Portuguese sailors brought bananas to Europe from West Africa. Passive: The original banana has been cultivated and used since ancient times. Link to source: [The History of Bananas as Food \(thespruceeats.com\)](https://thespruceeats.com)

- 2.
- 3.
- 4.
- 5.
- 6.

Intransitive Verbs

As mentioned in the chart above, sometimes sentences cannot be made passive. That is because a sentence must have a direct object (object of a verb) to make it passive. Some verbs are intransitive—that means they cannot be changed into passive. I could give you a long list of intransitive verbs, but it would be much easier to just not try to make sentences passive if they don't have an object. Let's practice so you can see what I mean.

Exercise 4.1.3

Make the following sentences passive, if possible. If it's not possible, explain why. Is the agent necessary to the meaning, or can it be deleted? Also, think about whether the sentence would be better active or passive, or if it doesn't matter in the current context. Last, make sure your form of "be" matches the verb tense used in the active sentence.

1. Paul McCartney and John Lennon wrote the song "Let It Be."
2. People in Saudi Arabia speak Arabic.
3. The sun rose at 6am this morning.
4. The scientist used an EKG machine to check the participant's heart after exercising.
5. Someone stole my phone.
6. Our flight arrived two hours late.
7. The mailman has already delivered the mail.
8. Jerry slept until noon.

Exercise 4.1.4: The Present Form of the Passive

A Baby Shower



A. Read the Active Paragraph

Before a baby is born, friends *throw* a baby shower for the *expectant* parents. The friends usually hold the shower a month or two before the *due date* of the baby. The hosts invite friends to come and celebrate. Sometimes, the mother knows the *gender* of the baby. If so, friends select gifts for either a boy or a girl. If not, friends try to *predict* the gender of the baby. Some friends *place bets* on whether it is a boy or a girl. The *event* prepares the mother and father for the birth. The parents will use the gifts from this event in the first year of the baby's life. The memories of this event will last a lifetime.

due date (N) – the predicted date of the baby's birth

place bets (N) – place money with the guess. If correct, the person takes the money. If incorrect, the person loses money.

expectant (Adj) – expecting, waiting for the birth of a child

gender (N) – the sex of the baby; male or female

throw a shower (expression) – to have a party for someone who is getting married or having a baby

B. Select the response from the list that best completes the sentence.

1. Before a baby is born, a baby shower (throw / is throwing / is thrown) for the expectant parents.
2. The shower (holds / is hold / is held) a month or two before the due date. The hosts (invite / are invited) friends to come and celebrate.
3. Sometimes, the gender of the baby (knows / is known / are known).
4. If so, gifts (select / are selected) for either a boy or a girl.
5. If not, friends (predict / is predicted) the gender of the baby.
6. Sometimes, bets (place / are placed) on whether it is a boy or girl.
7. The gifts from this event (used / are used / will be used) in the first year of the baby's life.
8. The memories of this event (last / are lasted) a lifetime.

If you need to review past participle forms and spelling, look in the appendix to this textbook, or see [Irreg Verb Forms 1](#) and [Irreg Verb Forms 2](#)

Exercise 4.1.5: Passive with Present, Future and Modal Forms

Superstitions and Wives' Tales



A. Read for Errors

For centuries, people have been telling some rather amusing wives' tales about babies.

- The gender of a baby can be predicted by how the mother carries the baby— high (girl) or low (boy).
- The breath from a baby's mouth can be stole by a cat.
- Wearing shoes will be help a baby learn to walk sooner.
- If a baby's hair are cutted before his first birthday, he will have "bad" hair.
- If a pregnant woman reaches above her head, the umbilical cord is going to be wrapped around the baby's head.
- A baby who is tickled too much will stutter.
- A baby's lungs won't be developed unless it is allowed to cry.
- The soul of the baby will be taken away if it sees its reflection in a mirror before the age of one.
- Calling a baby by its name before it christened is bad luck.

"Old Wives' Tales." Kids Health. 2014. Web. 2 Jan 2014. kidshealth.org/parent/general/aches/old_wives_tales.html >.

christen (V) – to formal take a name in a religious service; baptize in a church

soul (N) – the spiritual being

stutter (V) a brain disorder that affects a person's ability to produce speech without repeating initial sounds of words.

tickle (V) – lightly touch sensitive parts of the body and cause to laugh

umbilical cord (N) – the cord that attaches the fetus (the baby) to the mother's uterus, and which transports nourishment from mother to baby.

B. Correct or Incorrect?

Determine whether the comment is grammatically correct. Select the option *correct* or *incorrect*. If it is incorrect, write the correct sentence.

1. The gender of a baby can be predicted by how the mother carries the baby— high (girl) or low (boy).

Correct Incorrect--Correction:

2. The breath from a baby's mouth can be stole by a cat.

Correct Incorrect--Correction:

3. Wearing shoes will be help a baby learn to walk sooner.

Correct Incorrect--Correction:

4. If a baby's hair are cutted before his first birthday, he will have "bad" hair.

Correct Incorrect--Correction:

5. If a pregnant woman reaches above her head, the umbilical cord is going to be wrapped around the baby's head.

Correct Incorrect--Correction:

6. A baby who is being tickle too much will stutter.

Correct Incorrect--Correction:

7. A baby's lungs won't be developed unless it is allowed to cry.

Correct Incorrect--Correction:

8. The soul of the baby will be taken away if it sees its reflection in a mirror before the age of one.

Correct Incorrect--Correction:

9. Calling a baby by its name before it christened is bad luck.

Correct Incorrect--Correction:

Using the “by phrase”

As you have learned, passive sentences are used when writers don't know or don't care who actually performed the action. Thus, the majority of passive sentences do not include “by phrases”. Writers include the “by phrase” only when it is important for readers to know who performs the actions. Examples:

That building was designed **by a famous architect**.

(The “by phrase” is important, so it is included.)

“Macbeth” and “King Lear” were written **by William Shakespeare**.

(The “by phrase” is included because it is important.)

The mail is usually delivered before noon.

(The “by phrase” is not necessary because we know who delivers the mail each day.)

Exercise 4.1.6

Change the following sentences from the active voice to the passive voice. Omit the “by phrase” if it is unnecessary.

1. The Oak Tree Cinema shows movies on ten screens every day.

2. Our teacher wrote this grammar book.

3. Housekeepers make beds in motels seven days a week.

4. Instructors must turn off the projector before leaving the classroom.
5. New instructors must receive training before using the equipment.
6. Pilots fly planes out of Hobby Airport twenty-four hours a day.
7. Students learn foreign languages in classrooms all over the world.
8. Patients in the children's hospital designed the Christmas cards.
9. Workers are repairing potholes in streets throughout the city.
10. The hurricane knocked down many fences all over the county.

Practices 1, 2 and 3 derived from [It's All Greek to Me!](#) Copyright © 2018 by Charity Davenport is licensed under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International License](#)

Practices 4 and 5 from [Grammar Quizzes](#) by [Julie Sevastopoulos](#) licensed for use under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#)

Using the By Phrase from [UVIC Study Zone](#) licensed for use under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#)

This page titled [4.1.1: Practice with Passive](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

4.1.2: Passive Voice Exercises-Various Tenses

Exercise 4.1.7: Passive in Present Tense

Change the following sentences from active voice to passive voice.

1. A maid cleans our house every weekend.
Our house is cleaned by a maid every weekend.
2. Many people burn wood in fireplaces during winter.
3. In our neighborhood, workers pick up the trash twice a week.
4. The state of California grows most of our fruits and vegetables.
5. People eat rice with meals in many countries.
6. Gardeners grow vegetables and flowers in gardens.
7. Nurses and doctors care for patients.

Passive in Past Tense

Exercise 4.1.8:

Change the following past tense sentences from active voice to passive voice. Do not include the "by phrase" if it is not needed.

1. Customers bought three hundred books at the store yesterday.
2. A burglar stole a valuable diamond ring from my neighbor last week.
3. Someone broke into my car and stole my laptop.
4. The police arrested the suspect in the early morning hours.
5. A driver hit a pedestrian who was crossing the street this morning.
6. The people elected a new president last year.

7. Teachers taught most classes online during the pandemic.
8. Millions of Americans ate millions of hamburgers yesterday.

Exercise 4.1.9: Passive Voice Exercise-Mixed Tenses

Fill in the blanks with the correct passive form of the verb in parentheses. Use the rest of the sentence to decide which verb form to use.

1. The new bridge _____ (build) next year.
2. So far this semester, three essays _____ (submit) by the students.
3. The financial report _____ (submit) by the manager yesterday.
4. My street _____ (repair) this week. The work is scheduled to end on Friday.
5. The new office computers _____ (install) when I entered the office yesterday.
6. The Museum of Fine Arts _____ (visit) by thousands of tourists every year.
7. Taylor Swift's new album _____ (just/release), and people have already purchased millions.
8. The marketing project _____ (not finish) by the team members yet.
9. A new data security policy _____ (announce) by the CEO later this week.
10. The problem with the dam _____ (solve) by the engineers last week.
11. The best candidate for the job _____ (choose) by the committee tomorrow.
12. Some important documents _____ (deliver) to the office at 3 p.m. yesterday.
13. My office _____ (paint) while I was on vacation.
14. My son's birthday cake _____ (bake) right now.

Exercise 4.1.5 Original Exercise Created with the assistance of Chat GPT

This page titled [4.1.2: Passive Voice Exercises-Various Tenses](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

4.1.3: Passive Exercises- Modal Verbs

Passive Practice: Modal Verbs

The passive of modal verbs is formed as follows:

Subject + modal verb + be + past participle + rest of sentence.

Example: A new bridge must be built to replace the one that was destroyed in the storm.

Exercise 4.1.10: Put the passive form of the verbs in the blanks.

1. Medicine should _____ (avoid) unless it is necessary.
2. The cake must _____ (eat) by the kids last night.
3. The bank robber could _____ (send) to jail for ten years.
4. Some classes have to _____ (take) by ESOL students.
5. That computer should _____ (repair) by the IT department last week.
6. He ought to _____ (punish) by his parents for being so rude.
7. Our television must _____ (fix) before the big game on Saturday.

Exercise 4.1.11: Change these active sentences to the passive. Do not include the "by phrase" if it is not needed.

1. Passengers must show their identification at the gate.
2. Someone should have repaired the potholes before any cars got damaged.
3. Someone should deliver the package by tomorrow afternoon.
4. Mike might have eaten the last cookie.
5. Robots might take care of our children in the future.
6. Drivers should avoid the freeway because of the accident.
7. Workers will fix my fence on Saturday.
8. Someone might break into your car if you leave a backpack on the seat.

Exercise 4.1.12: Change these passive sentences to the active. You may need to add an agent

1. Assignments must be turned in before midnight.

Students must turn in assignments before midnight.

2. The fence might have been damaged by our neighbor's dog.

3. Classroom computers can only be used when class is in session.
4. He was able to be seen by everyone in the room. (BE CAREFUL)
5. Five boys will be expelled from the school by the principal for fighting.

Page created with the assistance of Chat GPT

This page titled [4.1.3: Passive Exercises- Modal Verbs](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

5: Connectors- Adverbials, Adverb Clauses and Phrases

5.1: Introduction to Phrases and Clauses

5.1.1: Clause Joining and Punctuation

5.1.2: Group 3 Connectors and Complex Sentences

5.2: Comparison and Contrast

5.3: Connectors of Purpose Reason and Result

5.4: Connectors-Addition

5.4.1: Practice-Addition

This page titled [5: Connectors- Adverbials, Adverb Clauses and Phrases](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

5.1: Introduction to Phrases and Clauses

From: Lumen Learning

Learning Objectives

- Differentiate between phrases and clauses
- Differentiate between dependent and independent clauses

Phrases and Clauses

Phrases and clauses are groups of words that act as a unit and perform a single function within a sentence. A **phrase** is a group of words that may have a partial subject or verb but not both, or it may have neither a subject nor a verb. Phrases never have a subject doing the action of a verb. A **clause**, however, is by definition a group of words that has a subject and a verb. A sentence can have any number of clauses and phrases combined together. See the examples below:

Phrases	Clauses
Walking along the riverbank	Sarah smiled warmly
With a green shirt	She laughs at shy people
Best friend	Because he gave her a puppy
On the horizon	When the saints go marching in
After the devastation	I waited for him
Because of her glittering smile	He wants to become an engineer

Notice how each of the clauses has a subject and a verb, but the phrases do not. Some of the clauses contain phrases, like “She laughs at shy people.” “She laughs” is a clause, and “at shy people” is a phrase that complements the clause and completes the sentence.

Phrases can be any combination of words that do not combine a subject and a verb. There are many types of phrases, including **noun phrases** (*the nice neighbor, my best friend, the best restaurant*), **verb phrases** (*was waiting for the rain to stop, have been sleeping*), **prepositional phrases**, which follow a preposition (*after the storm, to the end of time, in the road*) **gerund phrases** (*having eaten a satisfying meal, singing loudly*) **infinitive phrases** (*to register for classes, to learn a language*) and **participial phrases** (*broken into tiny pieces, taken with a glass of water*)

You might be tempted to just assume that phrases are shorter than clauses. This is not always true. Many phrases are only two words long, but many are much longer. Look at the following sentence:

- **In 1833**, Faraday’s experimentation **with electrolysis** indicated a natural unit **of electrical charge**, thus **pointing to a discrete rather than continuous charge**.

Each of the bolded segments of this sentence is a phrase. Be sure as you analyze each sentence that you are looking for a subject and a verb to determine what is a clause and what is a phrase.

Watch It

Click through this interactive to learn more about the differences between clauses and phrases.

<https://lumenlearning.h5p.com/content/1290910165214270728/embed>

Dependent and Independent Clauses

There are two types of clauses: dependent and independent. A **dependent clause** has both a subject and a verb, but it is not a complete sentence and does not express a complete thought. It is dependent on something else; it cannot stand on its own. Some

examples of dependent clauses include:

- When we get enough rain
- Because I was upset
- Which book I want to read next
- Until the sun sets

You can see that each of these clauses has a noun and a verb, but they also have an additional word, like a **subordinating conjunction** (*because*) or a **relative pronoun** (*which*), which makes the clause feel incomplete. These clauses must be attached to an independent clause to be a part of a complete sentence.

An **independent clause**, on the other hand, is free to stand by itself. It contains a subject and a verb, and expresses a complete thought. Here are some examples of independent clauses:

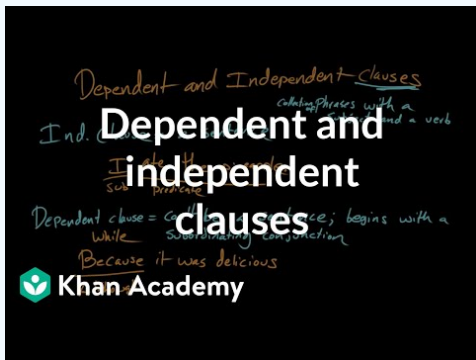
- I enjoy sitting by the fireplace.
- The sun set.
- This is the book I want to read next.

So how can you tell if a clause is dependent or independent? Sometimes they can be almost exactly the same. For example, “I was a little girl in 1995” is an independent clause, but “Because I was a little girl in 1995” is a dependent clause.

Look for the common words that are known to make dependent clauses, like subordinating conjunctions and relative pronouns. Some common ones are: **after, although, as, as if, because, before, even if, even though, if, since, though, unless, until, whatever, when, whenever, whether, and while**. Also pay attention to whether the clause makes sense standing by itself. Do you understand the whole idea of what the sentence is saying? Does the thought seem incomplete? If it feels incomplete, it is probably a dependent clause.

✓ Watch it

Watch this video to learn more about dependent and independent clauses.



A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: pb.libretexts.org/ec1/?p=602

You can view the [transcript for “Dependent and independent clauses” here \(opens in new window\)](#).

Exercise 5.1

Choose whether the underlined part of the sentence is a phrase, dependent clause, or independent clause:

1. To avoid getting wet, she took an umbrella.
A) Phrase B) Dependent Clause C) Independent Clause
2. He was excited **because he had finished the project**.
A) Phrase B) Dependent Clause C) Independent Clause
3. The dog barked loudly **during the entire movie**.

- A) Phrase B) Dependent Clause C) Independent Clause
4. He explained **why he was late**.
- A) Phrase B) Dependent Clause C) Independent Clause
5. **I will not go to the concert** unless it stops raining.
- A) Phrase B) Dependent Clause C) Independent Clause
6. The team was thrilled **after winning the championship**.
- A) Phrase B) Dependent Clause C) Independent Clause
7. She didn't know **how to solve the problem**.
- A) Phrase B) Dependent Clause C) Independent Clause
8. **Eating breakfast quickly**, he ran to catch the bus.
- A) Phrase B) Dependent Clause C) Independent Clause
9. They arrived at the airport **before the flight took off**.
- A) Phrase B) Dependent Clause C) Independent Clause
10. **She was tired**, so she went to bed early.
- A) Phrase B) Dependent Clause C) Independent Clause
11. She will call you **when she finishes work**.
- A) Phrase B) Dependent Clause C) Independent Clause
12. **Wrapped in shiny, red paper**, the present was the most beautiful of all.
- A) Phrase B) Dependent Clause C) Independent Clause
13. **They were happy** that the concert was a success.
- A) Phrase B) Dependent Clause C) Independent Clause
14. **Because it was raining**, the picnic was canceled.
- A) Phrase B) Dependent Clause C) Independent Clause
15. **Having finished his work**, he decided to go out for dinner.
- A) Phrase B) Dependent Clause C) Independent Clause

Try It: <https://assessments.lumenlearning.co...essments/20348>

Contributors and Attributions

CC licensed content, Original

- Phrases and Clauses Interactive. **Authored by:** Excelsior OWL. **Located at:** <https://owl.excelsior.edu/esl-wow/editing-polishing/check-punctuation/esl-basic-sentence-structure/>. **License:** *CC BY: Attribution*
- Phrases and Clauses Additional Content. **Authored by:** Alyse Leininger for Lumen Learning. **License:** *CC BY: Attribution*
- Practice Exercise: Original Content by Allyson Marceau
- Dependent and Independent Clauses. **Authored by:** Khan Academy. **Located at:** <https://www.khanacademy.org/humanities/grammar/syntax-sentences-and-clauses/phrases-and-clauses/v/dependent-and-independent-clauses-syntax-khan-academy>. **License:** *CC BY: Attribution*. **Lice**

This page titled [5.1: Introduction to Phrases and Clauses](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

- [12.19: Phrases and Clauses](#) by Lumen Learning is licensed [CC BY 4.0](#). Original source: <https://courses.lumenlearning.com/englishcomp1>.

5.1.1: Clause Joining and Punctuation

Clause Joining and Connectors

The Three Families of Connectors

Below is a table of common connectors and the logical relationships that they indicate. After the table, you will see the punctuation rules for each type.

The Three Families of Connectors

Type/ Usage:	Group 1: Coordinators: Can join two independent clauses or phrases	Group 2: Transitions (Adverbials): Usually used as transitions but can connect independent clauses	Group 3: Subordinators: Create dependent clauses, which are connected with independent clauses
Addition	and	additionally, also, furthermore, moreover, similarly	
Cause	for		as, because, since
Choice/alternative	nor, or	alternatively	
Condition		otherwise	if, whether, unless, as long as, until
Contrast	but, yet	however, instead, nevertheless, on the other hand	although, even though, though, whereas, while, even if
Effect/Purpose	so	as a result, consequently, therefore, thus	in order to (that), so that
Time		subsequently	before, after, when, while, as soon as, as since, whenever, until (with a condition)

GROUP 1 CONNECTORS: COORDINATORS

Coordinators can join two clauses or two phrases. When they join two independent clauses, the result is a **compound sentence**. There are only seven coordinators: For, And, Nor, But, Or, Yet, and So. You can remember them by this acronym:

FANBOYS

How to punctuate when using coordinators:

Only use a comma if you are using a coordinator to join two clauses. No commas is needed if you are joining two phrases. Here are some examples with brackets around the clauses and phrases.

[I am usually afraid of dogs], **but** [I love my sister's dog, Rex]. (Joining two *independent clauses*)

[Roses are red], **and** [violets are blue]. (Joining two *independent clauses*)

[I was tired after my journey], **for** [I had been traveling for hours.] (Note: "For" is used to introduce a reason.)

[The prickly rose] **and** [the lengthy brambles] scratched my skin. (Joining two *phrases*)

The following is a very tricky example:

{The instincts of both [dogs] **and** [cats] have been crippled by the human need to make these animals dependent upon us}, **so** {they rely on us for [their every need] **and** even for [emotional satisfaction]}. (Joining 2 *phrases*, 2 *clauses*, 2 *phrases*)

Watch Out! Students tend to overuse "and" and "but," yet they neglect the other coordinators that may more effectively show the relationship between their ideas.

? Exercise 5.2

Join the following sentence pairs with a **coordinating conjunction** that represents the correct logic, and punctuate the new sentence correctly. You may need to change the order of the sentences.

1. Diane went to the animal shelter. She wanted a new dog. *Diane wanted a new dog, so she went to the animal shelter.*
2. She loved her previous dog. He had passed away.
3. She had mourned for a while. Now she was ready for a new pet.
4. She played with a Yorkie. She played with a Terrier mix.
5. She couldn't decide whether to adopt a big dog. She couldn't decide whether to adopt a smaller dog.
6. They were both so sweet. She had to make a choice.
7. In the end, she decided on the Terrier mix. He seemed like a perfect mix of being snuggly, loving, and protective.

GROUP 2 CONNECTORS: TRANSITIONS (aka Transitional Adverbs, Adverbial Conjunctions, or Conjunctive Adverbs)

Transitions indicate logical relationships between clauses but -- unlike coordinators and subordinators -- can move around and create various effects in the sentence.

Transitional adverbs always take some kind of punctuation *after* them. This is how to punctuate transitional adverbs:

- [Most dogs scare me]. **However**, [Rex is an exception].

(The first clause ends with a period and stands alone as a sentence. The second clause begins with the transitional adverb, which is capitalized and has a comma after it.)

- [**Most dogs scare me**]; **however**, [Rex is an exception]. (Note: **This structure is rarely used and should generally be avoided.**)

(The first clause ends with a semi-colon. The second clause begins with the transitional adverb, which is lowercase and has a comma after it.)

- [Most dogs scare me]. [Rex, **however**, is an exception].

(The first clause ends with a period and stands alone as a sentence. The transitional adverb interrupts the second clause and has commas around it to emphasize the contrast.)

- [Most dogs scare me]. [Rex is an exception, **however**].

(The first clause ends with a period, and stands alone as a sentence. The transitional adverb appears at the end of the sentence with a comma before it and a period after it. Placing the transitional adverb at the end of the sentence de-emphasizes the contrast.)

In these examples, notice that the transition word could be placed in several different places in the second clause. *The ability to move around and still sound right is how you know it is a transition word!* You can't do this with coordinators or subordinators.

Notice that when a transition word *begins the second clause*, **the punctuation before the transition word is either a semi-colon or a period**. If the transition word *is in the middle of a clause*, **commas surround the transition word**. If the transition word is *at the end of the second clause*, **a comma comes before it and a period after**.

? Exercise 5.3

Use a **transitional adverb** that represents the correct logic, and punctuate the new sentence correctly. Place the transitional adverb in various locations: **before a sentence**, **as an interrupter within the sentence**, or **at the end of a sentence**. (**Do NOT use a semicolon.**)

1. Diane decided to take Buster to training. She wasn't sure what level of class they should attend.
2. He knew the commands "sit," "stay," and "heel." He did not know how to walk past other dogs politely.
3. She had not worked with Buster. She had taken classes with her previous dog.
4. She explained this to the SPCA employee, who could not really observe Buster in action. The employee recommended taking the beginning class.
5. Buster and Diane's first class went well. They decided to continue and ultimately finished the course

Contributors and Attributions

- Original Content. **Provided by:** Libretexts. **License:** CC BY-SA 4.0: Attribution.

This page titled [5.1.1: Clause Joining and Punctuation](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

5.1.2: Group 3 Connectors and Complex Sentences

Group 3 Connectors-Subordinating Conjunctions (Subordinators)

The third type of connectors in our series is subordinating conjunctions. Subordinating conjunctions are connectors that begin a dependent clause. A dependent clause can be combined with an independent clause to create a **complex** sentences.

What Is a Complex Sentence?

Like compound sentences, complex sentences have two clauses. Look at this sentence. The **subjects** are bold, the predicates (verb phrases) are underlined, and the conjunction is in italics.

- **Camilla** quit her job *when* **she** received a gift of \$6,000.

There are two clauses here, but they are not equal:

- Camilla quit her job – this can stand alone.
- When she received a gift of \$6,000 – this does not have a complete meaning without the first part.

The first clause is an **independent** clause. The second is a **dependent** clause: it needs the first clause to give it meaning. It cannot stand alone.

Dependent clauses begin with subordinating conjunctions (aka subordinators). The chart below shows a list of common subordinating conjunctions sorted by their functions in a sentence.

Common Subordinating Conjunctions

Time	Reason	Contrast	Unexpected Result
when before after while whenever once as soon as	because since as	whereas while although though	although though even though

Condition	Purpose	Relative Pronoun	Imaginary Comparisons
if whether unless as long as until	so that	that which who whom whose	as if as though

Complex Sentences--Examples

- As soon as I got home from school, I ate a sandwich.
- I ate a sandwich as soon as I got home from school.
- You look as though you have seen a ghost.
- The boy ran home as if a killer was chasing him.
- My students have trouble writing sentences, whereas I can write sentences easily.*
- Texas is a large state, while Connecticut is quite small.*
- I took a bus downtown on Saturday so that I could save money on gas and parking.
- Unless you study hard for the final exam, you will not get a passing grade.
- My friend failed the examination even though she studied hard.

How to Punctuate Complex Sentences:

Dependent Clause , Independent Clause

Although I am usually afraid of dogs, I love my sister's dog, Rex.

In this case, the subordinator that begins the dependent clause (although) de-emphasizes the fact that the writer is usually afraid of dogs because that is the clause the subordinator begins. A comma is placed between the two clauses because the dependent clause is at the beginning of the sentence.

Independent Clause Dependent Clause

I love my sister's dog, Rex **although** I am usually afraid of dogs.

Here, the dependent clause (beginning with "although") is at the end of the sentence. No comma separates the two clauses.

Another example

Because I was hungry, I ate a sandwich.

I ate a sandwich **because** I was hungry.

To repeat: Dependent clauses must be used with independent clauses. If the **dependent clause is first, a comma separates the two clauses**. If the dependent clause comes after the independent clause, **no comma is needed**.

However, there is an exception!

When you use **while** and **whereas** to express contrast, a comma is used before the dependent clause. However, this is not true when **while** is used in a time clause.

- John loves to swim in the ocean, while Sherry only likes swimming in the neighborhood pool.
- The math class was challenging for Joe, whereas the English class was relatively easy.
- We watched the football game while the children were playing outside.

Exercise 5.4

Combine the simple sentences below to make one complex sentence using a subordinator. There may be more than one correct answer.

1. His mother was a single parent. She always bought presents at Christmas.

-
2. He lost a lot of weight. He was able to play sports.
-

3. Houston is a big, urban city. Seguin is a small, rural town.

4. I would love to write a novel. I don't have enough patience to sit and write.

5. Sam was driving home from work. He saw a bear on the road.

6. Take a map on your hike in the mountains. You won't get lost.

7. You drive east from Houston on I-10. You will eventually come to Louisiana.

Exercise 5.5

*Correct punctuation errors In the following paragraph by adding or removing punctuation marks. **Do not use semicolons.** There are **ten** mistakes in punctuation in the paragraph. (Some mistakes require more than one change.) Remember to place commas after any element that comes before the subject of an independent clause.*

After they finished the first dog/people training course at the SPCA Diane decided to sign Buster up for the next level class, which required more socialization. Diane knew this would be a useful experience for Buster, because he growled at other dogs when she took him on walks. Because of this she started walking across the street whenever she saw another dog approach. As a result Buster received less socialization. She was worried about whether the strategies from class would work On the other hand if she didn't bring him to the class his behavior would not improve because he could only learn with other dogs around him. The first session did not go well. Therefore the instructor asked Diane and Buster to work one-on-one with a trainer. Although, Diane knew this would be more expensive, she figured it was a bit like having a child: Sometimes you have to pay for things, although you'd rather not. In the end, it would be the best for both of them.

Exercise 5.6:

Use the following subordinators to make original complex sentences. (Do not copy sentences from the book or another source! Write your own original sentences.)

1. although
2. because
3. while
4. after
5. if
6. unless
7. even though
8. until

This page titled [5.1.2: Group 3 Connectors and Complex Sentences](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

5.2: Comparison and Contrast

This page will help you to better understand the expressions of comparison (similarities) and contrast (differences) that connect ideas in and between sentences.

The Language of Similarities	
I. Coordinators	
and	Community college students need financial aid to support themselves, and four-year college students need financial aid to pay for school.
both.... and ...	Both in-state and out-of-state students pay the same tuition rate in private universities.
not only...but also...	Not only Professor Smith but also Professor Brown had a significant impact on my career choice. The college not only offers more majors but also has lower tuition.
neither ... nor ...	Neither my mom nor my dad will be able to attend my graduation.
II. Subordinating Conjunctions	
just as, like (informal)	I can skate very well, just as my big sister can.
III. Conjunctive Adverbs (Transitions)	
similarly	My grades have significantly improved. Similarly , I have gained confidence in participating in class projects.
likewise	His writing skill has improved. Likewise , he has expanded his English vocabulary knowledge.
also	Tim enjoyed working with his colleagues. He also developed a clear understanding of teamwork.
too	Chemistry is a difficult field to be in; physics is, too .
IV. Others (Note: These connectors are usually followed by a noun phrase.)	
similar to	Similar to her husband, she has a military background.
(be) similar to	My sister's sense of style is similar to mine.
(be) the same as	Her sense of humor is the same as her father's.
(be) compared to/with	Many foreign TV shows are compared to American TV shows.
like	Many foreign movies like American movies have cruel scenes in them.
just like	Competitive swimming is just like hockey. They both require endurance and speed.

Exercise 5.7

The following sentences use signal words to show similarities. In each sentence, highlight the signal word and add punctuation. (Avoid semicolons.)

1. Jeff's son started college this year likewise my daughter is attending San Jacinto College.
2. Both Paula and Lucca had a great time working on the campaign.
3. She loves hiking and gardening similarly he enjoys participating in outdoor activities.
4. Not only Tim but also Janet spent a full month evaluating their company's safety plans.
5. Netflix is making their own movies and television shows just as Amazon Prime has gotten into the business of making shows for streaming.

Exercise 5.8

Add connecting words or phrases to the two sentences using the comparison signal word given in parentheses. Some will be combined, and others will remain as separate sentences. (avoid semicolons)

1. George liked studying mathematics.

He saw that English would help him in his career as a counselor. (**similarly**)

2. The dog barked for several hours.

The dog chewed through the pillows on the couch. (**not only.... but also**)

3. Stanford's women's basketball team has now won the most national championships.

The University of Maryland's women's lacrosse team has won the most national championships. (**similar to**)

4. The United States has the Pacific Ocean on its western border.

The United States has the Atlantic Ocean on its eastern border. (**just as**)

5. Recycling aluminum cans is beneficial to the environment.

Reusing plastic bags helps reduce pollution. (**both....and**)

The Language of Differences

I. Coordinators

but	The twins love traveling, but their brother prefers spending time at home.
yet	I studied for months for the TOEFL test, yet I did not get the passing score to apply for graduate school.

II. Subordinating Conjunctions

while	Many Americans love basketball, while many Canadians love ice hockey.
whereas	Bruce never throws anything away, whereas his sister declutters her house every three months.
although /though / even though	Unexpected Result: Though/ Although/ Even though she is old enough, her parents do not allow her to drink at a family dinner. Direct Contrast: Although/Though Mary prefers to live in the city, her husband prefers the suburbs.

III. Conjunctive Adverbs (Transitions)

on the contrary	I thought that Sheila loved to travel. On the contrary, she is a true homebody. Be careful about using "on the contrary." You can read about it here: On the Contrary vs However https://www.englishcurrent.com/gramm...y-and-however/
on the other hand	My vacation is going to cost a lot. On the other hand , my sister's choice of vacation is going to be more affordable.
in contrast	Amir was nervous before the test. In contrast , Tammy was very calm.
in comparison	Tammy enjoyed the holiday party. In comparison , James found it boring.
however	Some people enjoy hosting holiday parties. However , others see it as a waste of time and money.
nevertheless	Most parents know that sugar is bad for children. Nevertheless , many parents do not limit the amount of sugar they consume. Note: "Nevertheless" is used to express unexpected result. It cannot be used to express direct contrast (opposites.)

IV. Others

despite (+ noun phrase)
in spite of (+noun phrase)

Despite her illness, Jan attended class today.
In spite of the rain, we went on a picnic.

(be) unlike
unlike + noun phrase

Her new million dollar home is **unlike** her apartment that she had in New York.
Unlike her sister, Joan decided not to go to college.

(be) different from

I am **different** from my sister, who is an introvert.

to differ (from)

George Washington University **differs from** Howard University in many ways.

compared (to)

Compared to private schools, public schools do not require uniforms.

Exercise 5.9

The following sentences use signal words to show differences. In each sentence, highlight the signal word(s) and punctuate it properly, (Avoid semicolons)

1. Philadelphia is not as expensive as New York City.
2. New York has a relatively low crime rate but Philadelphia's crime rate is higher.
3. Many people think New York has the best museums whereas the art museum in Philadelphia is world-class.
4. Housing prices in New York City are consistently the highest in the country in contrast Philadelphia offers more reasonable housing costs.
5. Although Philadelphia offers job opportunities in the health sector New York City offers many jobs in the financial sector.
6. The two cities differ from each other significantly in size with Philadelphia having a larger space than New York City but fewer people.

Exercise 5.10

Connect the two sentences with the comparison signal word given in parentheses. Some will be combined, others will remain as separate sentences. (Avoid semicolons.) Be careful to punctuate correctly.

1. The University of Maryland has a large campus in Prince George's County.

George Washington University has a small campus in downtown Washington, DC. (**however**)

2. The University of Pennsylvania is a private school in downtown Philadelphia.

Pennsylvania State is a public school in State College, Pennsylvania. (**unlike**) *Hint: Use "which is."*

3. The University of Maryland has strong programs in the sciences and engineering.

Students for George Washington University tend to study political science and international studies. (**while**)

4. The University of Maryland is a public university with low tuition.

George Washington University is private university with a much higher tuition. **(but)**

Exercise 5.11

Read the example sentences below and decide whether the two sentences show similarities or differences. Connect the two sentences by either making them into one sentence or by adding an adverbial conjunction (transition) before the second sentence. Use an appropriate connector to show either similarity or contrast.

Pair 1

Teachers in China do not expect students to ask questions or to make comments in class.

American teachers think that asking questions and making comments shows good participation.

Pair 2

Some people find it helpful to listen to music when they study.

Others prefer silence.

Pair 3

English is spoken in America.

It is spoken in Great Britain, Canada, Australia, and New Zealand.

Pair 4

College students have to complete an average of three to five assignments per week.

High school students tend to have one to three assignments per week.

Pair 5

American students enjoy working on collaborative school projects.

Chinese students enjoy working more on their own.

Compiled by Delpha Thomas; adapted by Tim Krause. Introduction to Academic Writing for ESOL. Second Edition, released 2018, licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-Share Alike 4.0 International License](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/)

This page titled [5.2: Comparison and Contrast](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

5.3: Connectors of Purpose Reason and Result

Connectors of purpose: in order to; to; so that

Connectors of purpose are connectors which are used when one action (or clause) results in, explains, or provides an intention for another clause (usually the one with the main verb) within a sentence.

Group 1-The Infinitive of Purpose and "In order to"

Amil took out his pen in order to write a letter.

Jonas picked up his fork to eat his dinner.

Note that the clause of purpose results in one clause (Amil took out his pen) explaining the subsequent clause (to write a letter). The purpose of Amil taking out his pen was to write.

Group 2: Subordinator

Kelvin turned on the light so (that) he could see the room.

When "so that" signifies a purpose, it is possible to omit the pronoun "that". In this case, there is not comma because "so that" or "so" are part of a dependent clause. Compare with the use of "so," when it means "for this reason" (FANBOYS)

Connectors of reason: as/since; because; because of; due to

A clause of reason is usually used to describe why something happened due to the action described by the main clause.

Group 1: Coordinator

I needed to pick up my daughter, so I left work early today.

The streaming service offered a discount on new subscribers, for they were confident that users would continue to use their service.

Group 2: Subordinators

As it was dark, we used a flashlight.

This could also be written: Since it was dark, we used a flashlight.

Again, it can be helpful in using connectors of reason correctly if you look for the reason in the sentence that explains the main clause. In this case, the reason we used a flashlight was because of (or due to) the dark.

Group 3: Phrases: Due to/Because of/Owing to/ On account of

Due to unforeseen circumstances, the party was canceled.

Because of the rain, we stayed indoors.

Note that the reason we stayed indoors was because of the rain.

Connectors of result: so; for this reason; as a result; as a consequence; therefore

Connectors of result are used when one clause comes about as a consequence, or direct result, of the main clause. When x occurs, y will happen. Connectors of result are normally used when there is no doubt regarding the outcome of the action described in the main clause.

Group 1: Phrases Expressing Results (Effects)

George's book was wet as a result of being dropped in a puddle.

Note that the outcome is beyond doubt: it is certain that the result of a book being dropped in a puddle is that it will be wet.

Group 2: Phrases Expressing Causes

As a consequence of the delayed train, the guests were late for the wedding.

Again, note that the guests' lateness is a direct result of the activity described in the main clause.

Group 3: Transitions

It was cold. Therefore, we lit a fire.

I was stuck in traffic. As a result, I arrived late to class.

The storm hit the city directly. Consequently, the damage was extensive.

Exercise 5.12

Complete the following sentences of purpose, reason and result:

1. The drive was too long to take in one day. _____, they stayed in a hotel for the night.
2. _____ he was far from his friends and family, Jules felt lonely.
3. Mark did not attend class _____ his illness.
4. _____ it was sunny, we went for a walk by the sea.
5. Jane bought milk, eggs and sugar _____ she wanted to make a cake for Steve's birthday.
6. They moved forward _____ they could board the train.
7. The tree was cut down _____ it was stopping the light from reaching the window.
8. _____ the high cost of gasoline, Marie could only afford to buy five gallons.
9. _____ the boys' bad behavior, they weren't allowed out to play.
10. Stacy's hair was wet _____ her walk in the rain.

Page adapted from [We Love Teaching English](#) is licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution - Non-Commercial - No-Derivatives 4.0 International License](#).

This page titled [5.3: Connectors of Purpose Reason and Result](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

5.4: Connectors-Addition

Expressions for Adding Additional Ideas

Joining words and Phrases vs. Clauses

AND — CONJUNCTION / COORDINATOR

And, and also, and as well as and both join two sentence elements, such as two nouns, two verbs, two adjectives, two phrases or two clauses (two same word forms). When **and** connects two sentence elements, no comma is used. When three or more elements are joined, a comma is used.

Anne is an actress. She **acts and sings**. (verbs)

Anne loves **dance and also music**. (nouns)

She will compete in **ballroom and also modern** dance. (adjectives)

Anne has to dance **gracefully and precisely** in order to win. (adverbs)

She must **use correct dance technique as well as follow the rules**. (verb phrases)

BOTH...AND / NOT ONLY BUT ALSO-CORRELATIVE CONJUNCTIONS

Both is paired with **and** to add emphasis to two coordinated elements in a sentence. **Not only** and **also** are paired with **but** to add emphasis to two coordinated elements in a sentence. These paired expressions are called correlative conjunctions.

Anne is a woman **who not only knows her strengths but also knows who will give her best effort**. (clauses)

The judges want her **both to extend and to point** her toes. (phrases)

She could **not only sing but also dance**. (verbs)

Our college won **not only the baseball game but also the soccer match**. (noun phrases)

IN ADDITION — TRANSITIONS

In addition and **additionally** (adverb) are transitions that add information in one sentence to the information in the next sentence. The word (s) are separated by a comma. **Also**¹ (can be placed before a clause or before other elements in the clause.

Anne and Alex will learn samba and cha cha. **Additionally**, they will try the merengue.

Anne has to dance gracefully. **In addition**, she must dance precisely.

She must use correct dance technique. She must **also** follow the rules

Anne and Alex are very graceful dancers. **Also**¹, they have years of experience dancing together.

In addition to and **besides** are followed by nouns or noun phrases.

Besides pastries, the shop also sells cookies.

Besides having several dance competitions, Alex and Anne have family obligations.

For now, Alex and Anne are taking it easy **in addition to** postponing future touring plans.

In addition to her two cats, Sue also has a dog.

¹**When also** appears at the beginning of a sentence, it is considered to be formal by some. *Also, she dances jazz. Preferred usage: She **also** dances jazz. She dances jazz **also**.*

²**And** — [What grammarians have to say](#) about using "and" at the beginning of a sentence

Related pages: [And so / too / also](#), [FANBOYS Parallel Phrasing](#), [Connective Adverbs](#), [Comma-series](#), [Overview of Connectives](#).

ADDING A CONCLUSIVE FACT

Furthermore, **moreover** and **besides** add a final fact in order to make a point and/or to support an argument "*and finally this fact*". This is called a conclusive fact because it is placed at the end to convince the reader that your assertion, argument, or opinion is true.

In my opinion, Anne would be excellent in that movie. She has done several dramatic roles **and** has lots of experience. **Furthermore**, she looks like the character in the book. (formal)

I think Alex is the best choice. He has acted on Broadway **and** on television. **Moreover**, he has played supporting roles in three movies. (formal)

Alex and Anne won't be able to dance in the international competition in Rio de Janeiro. They are too busy. **Besides**, they can't get a visa in time. ("apart from the other reasons")

audition (N) — to try out for a part, give a short performance to see if the person is good for the part

conclusive fact (Adj) — showing that something is definitely true

role (N) — acting part in a play, opera, or ballet

theater (N) – a live production performed on a stage; **movie theater** (N) – cinema, a recorded showing in a theater (no stage)

See [Connective Adverbs](#), [In fact / Indeed / Besides -ing / Besides / Pop-Q "Besides"](#)

Adding more details vs. a stand-alone detail

ANOTHER DETAIL

An introductory phrase with **besides**, **in addition to**, and **along with** expresses that we are mentioning, but setting aside, an important detail, in order to mention more details "not including this, there is also this".

PREP PHRASE

Besides being funny,
"apart from this"

Along with enjoying what they do,

In addition to work,

Along with a promotion,

MAIN CLAUSE

he is also young and smart. (*information*)

they spend a lot of time together. (*information*)

they plan time to relax. (*information*)

They received several job offers. (*information*)

A STAND-ALONE OR WINNING DETAIL

Besides or **in addition** are used as transitions to add a fact that can stand on its own as reason enough for winning an argument (an outstanding fact); **in addition** links more information (also called a "[linking or connective adverb](#)").

MAIN CLAUSE	TRANSITION
Hire him because he is young and smart.	Besides, he is funny! (a winning fact or point in the argument)
They are a well-matched pair. Both have excellent dance technique.	Besides, they are good friends. (conclusive fact or argument)
They plan, practice, and perfect their work.	In addition, they take time to relax. (information)
They received several job offers.	In addition, they received a promotion. (information)

Also see [Connective Adverbs](#) (What's more, Not to mention, Additionally), [Noun Phrases](#) –reducing clauses

This page titled [5.4: Connectors-Addition](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

5.4.1: Practice-Addition

Exercise 5.13: Connectors and Punctuation-Talent Show Auditions



Read the paragraph and choose the connectors. **Add commas where needed.**

Talent shows on television are loved (also / and also) hated. Contestants perform "live" on the stage before the judges (and / in addition) millions of television viewers. To appear on a show, a contestant has to be talented and a good performer. (Furthermore, / And) the contestant has to be extremely bold. The judges can be mean. If they do not like the performance, they buzz the contestants and criticize them. (In addition / And) they insult the contestants.

Some contestants have neither talent nor good taste (additionally / besides) being fools. Others are very smart, talented (furthermore / and) creative. Most contestants are very talented, (and / as well as) they are looking for a break in show business. With a little imagination (as well as / in addition) hard work, some will become stars. (Furthermore / Besides) becoming famous, the contestants hope to get rich. Most of the contestants will get their "fifteen minutes of fame". (Moreover / As well as) they will get exposure that could advance their career.

a break (N) — an opportunity, a chance, a start

bold (Adj) — brave, without fear

buzz (V) — an electronic button that indicates rejection

criticize (V) — to say the good and bad points of something; express approval or disapproval

fool (N) — a person who appears to have poor judgment or a simple mind **good taste** (N) — the sense of what is fitting, harmonious, or beautiful

Exercise 5.14: Correct or Incorrect?

A. Read the paragraph

Ben wants to audition for a talent show. He is a tap dancer does a magic act. His act is special because he can tap dance. He can pull a rabbit out of a hat in addition whistling. (He can do all three at the same time.) He went to an audition for a talent show. He wore black pants and a jacket, in addition to his magic hat. He started with a little tap dance, and then he did his magic act. He thought he did very well. Everyone laughed, and cheered. Moreover, they applauded his performance afterwards. The judges said that his act wasn't original or creative. And, they already had a magic act.

applaud (V) — clap; make an approval sound with the hands

audition (V) — try out; a chance to show the director what he can do so that he can get a job

cheer (V) — shout encouragement (an audience)

magician (N) — a person who does magic tricks

whistle (V) — make a musical sound with the lips

B. Decide whether the sentence is correct or incorrect.

Select your response "correct" or "incorrect". Pay attention to the choice of connector and the punctuation. If it is incorrect write the correction. If it is correct, write "correct."

1. Ben wants to audition for a talent show. He is a tap dancer **and** does a magic act.

Correct Incorrect

Correction:

2. His act is special because he can tap dance and pull a rabbit out of a hat **in addition** whistling.

Correct Incorrect

Correction:

3. When he went to an audition for a talent show, he wore black pants, a jacket, **in addition to** his magic hat.

Correct Incorrect

Correction:

4. He started with a little tap dance, and then he did his magic act. He thought he did very well. **Everyone laughed, and cheered.** Moreover, they applauded his performance afterwards.

Correct Incorrect

Correction:

5. The judges said that his act wasn't original or creative. **And**, they already had a magic act.

Correct Incorrect

Correction:

Exercise 5.15

Fill in the blanks with a pair of conjunctions from the list.

either/or neither/nor not only/ but also both/and

1. James is very talented. He is _____ a great pianist, _____ a brilliant mathematician.
2. If I need a ride to work _____ my sister _____ my brother can bring me.
3. The puzzle was too difficult to solve. _____ Wayne _____ Daniel could solve it.
4. _____ the European Polecat _____ the Dwarf Mongoose are carnivores.
5. You can _____ communicate with me via phone _____ by email
6. _____ the Alaskan Malamute _____ the Chow Chow are among the heavy shedding dog breeds.

Exercise 5.16: Add Connectors

A. Read the Context (without connectors)

Janelle is a tough competitor at auditions. She is often called a "triple threat", which means she has multiple talents. Janelle dances, sings, acts, enchants audiences. She has studied modern, hip-hop, ballet. She has studied African dance. The African dance types include courtship, harvest, fertility, celebration, wedding, friendship. Janelle also sings beautifully. She has a four-octave vocal range. She has perfect pitch. Without using a microphone, she can easily be heard in the back of the room. She mostly sings R & B, pop, soul. She sings gospel. Janelle has acted in three Broadway musicals: *Wicked*, *Chicago*, *Lion King*. She is currently playing the part of "Rafiki" in *The Lion King*. She will be going on an International tour to Japan, China, Indonesia, the Philippines.

audition (N) — try out; show your talents to the judges or director so that you can get the job (acting, singing, etc.)

enchant (V) — delight; give a magical quality to a performance

go on tour (V) — travel around the country or world

musical (N) — a stage show with music and acting, such as *Chicago*, *Hamilton*, *Annie*, *West Side Story*, *Cabaret*, etc.

octave (N) — music: a series of eight tones (e.g., A, B, C, D, E, F, G)

B. Edit the Paragraph by Adding Coordinators

Each of the sentences taken from the reading is missing a coordinator. Edit the sentence in the space to the right of each sentence using coordinators. (More than one response may be correct.) Add commas if necessary.

1. Janelle dances, sings, acts, enchants audiences.
2. She has studied modern, hip-hop, ballet. She has studied African dance.
3. The African dance types include friendship, courtship, wedding, fertility, harvest dances.
4. Janelle sings beautifully. She has a four-octave vocal range. She has perfect pitch.
5. She mostly sings R & B, pop, soul. She sings gospel.
6. She will be going on an International tour to Japan, China, Indonesia, the Philippines.

This page titled [5.4.1: Practice-Addition](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

6: Real and Unreal Conditional

6.1: Chapter 6- Conditional/Hypothetical

6.1.1: Present Unreal (Second) Conditional

6.1.1.1: The "Be" Verb in Present Unreal Conditional

6.1.2: More Practice with Present Unreal (Second) Conditional

6.1.3: Past Unreal (Third) Conditional

6.1.4: Practice with Past Unreal (Third) Conditional

6.1.5: Mixed Conditionals

6.1.6: Conditionals-Review

This page titled [6: Real and Unreal Conditional](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

6.1: Chapter 6- Conditional/Hypothetical

Part 1: Future Real (First) Conditional

Form of the Future Real (First) Conditional

If	Subject	simple present (condition)	Subject	will	base form (result)
If	I you we they	come to the party don't come to the party	I you we they	will won't	make a cake. (result)
	he she it	comes to the party doesn't come to the party	he she it		

If	Subject	simple present (condition)	Question Word	Will	Subject	base form (result)
If	I you we they	fall	what	will	I you we they	do? (result)
	he she it	falls			he she it	

Uses of the First (Future Real) Conditional

We use the first conditional to express a possible condition and its probable result in the future. In a sentence structure, the 'if' clause describes the condition or requirements needed to make a future event or consequence occur.

Possibilities

We use the first conditional to describe possible outcomes if an action does/does not take place.

If you don't wear a sun hat, you may get sunburned.

If I save my money, I will buy a car.

My sister will be sad if I miss her recital.

If it is sunny, we will go to the park.

You will struggle in the exam if you don't study.

Future events

We use the first conditional to forecast outcomes based on a possible action taking place.

If you go to the store, please buy some apples.

If you meet Sally, let her know I am running late.

If you pack your swimsuit, we can go to the beach.

Consequences

We use the first conditional to describe a certain outcome if a prior action takes place.

If you **tell** him that, he **will not believe** you.

If you **don't finish** lunch, you **won't get** ice cream later.

I **will not be** your friend if you **are** mean,

You **'ll get** sick if you eat too much!

First conditional: be careful!

1. Instead of “will”, we can use the **imperative** to describe cause and effect.

If the apples are bruised, **don't buy** them.

Remember to say 'thank you' if you see Auntie Caroline.

2. Instead of “will”, we can use **modals**

I **might get** sick if I eat too much ice cream.

If it **is** windy on Saturday, we **could fly** our kite.

You **should talk** to your teacher if you **need** help,

I **'ll never speak** to you again if you **don't give** that back!

3. We can use time conjunctions such as **when, before, after and as soon as** instead of **if** in the condition clause to talk about future events. The present tense is used in the time clause here. Using a time clause means there is no condition for it to be true.

Some examples:

I'll buy a cat **when** we move to our new house.

When you come to stay, we'll go shopping.

Before you go, you should plan your trip.

You should visit the museum **after** you have settled in.

Please let me know **as soon as** you can.

Exercise 6.1

Fill in the blanks with the correct First (Future Real) Conditional forms. Some sentences require a modal or an imperative form.

1. If I _____ (get) sunburned, I _____ (feel) very sore.
2. I _____ (not/come) if I _____ (know) he's going.
3. If you _____ (not/want) to go to the movies, we _____ (watch) television at home
4. We _____ (stay) in Paris when we _____ (travel) to France.
5. She _____ (not / get) better if she _____ (not / practice).
6. If we _____ (not/see) each other tomorrow, we _____ (see) each other next week.
7. If he _____ (come), I _____ (be) surprised.
8. If the weather _____ (not improve), farmers _____ (not have) any crops.

 Grammar Quizzes by [Julie Sevastopoulos](#) is licensed for use under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#)

This page titled [6.1: Chapter 6- Conditional/Hypothetical](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

6.1.1: Present Unreal (Second) Conditional

Part 2: Present Unreal Conditional (Hypothetical Statements)

STATEMENT	
We use special verbs with if when we are talking about situations that we imagine; that is, things that probably will not happen. The unreal statement is in the Simple Past. The result clause includes a would or could modal form.	
UNREAL CONDITION	IMAGINED RESULT
IF + CLAUSE w/ SIMPLE PAST	CLAUSE w/ WOULD/COULD + BASE VERB
If I were/was a millionaire,*	I would buy a private jet.
If I were/was a millionaire,	I could buy a private jet.
If I could choose anything,	I would buy a house.
If I could choose anything,	I would buy a house. I <i>could buy</i> ¹ a house.
* Use "was" for informal situations and "were" for formal situations, including academic writing.	

NEGATIVE / QUESTION	
A negative is formed by placing not after the verb in the "if" clause or in the other clause. A question is formed by inverting the subject and modal verb (would or could) in the result clause.	
UNREAL CONDITION	IMAGINED RESULT
IF + CLAUSE w/ Simple Past	CLAUSE w/ WOULD/COULD + VERB
If I were/was a millionaire, (I am not)	I wouldn't travel on a commercial airline.
If I weren't /wasn't a millionaire, (I am)	I would have to travel like everyone else.
If I could vacation anywhere,	I wouldn't stay here.
If you were a millionaire,	could you stop working? 
If you could choose ,	would you move away? 

was / were – We often use **were** instead of **was** after **if**. Both **was** and **were** are used in formal English, but only **was** is used in informal English. **If I were you...**

PRESENT UNREAL – CONDITIONALS

In a present unreal (remote) conditional structure, modal **would** expresses an alternate, perhaps ideal world. This "remote" wording is used to soften an unpleasant response, apologize for failure or consider an alternate option. See [Past Hypotheticals](#) for examples.

PRESENT	RELATED ACTIVITY OR SITUATION
If he had time,	Ted would mow the grass.
REMOTE THINKING	
"This action or situation, in another world..."	will cause this related activity to occur."
ACTUAL SITUATION	
This situation or action has a poor chance of occurring.	This outcome has a poor chance of occurring.

Exercise 6.2: Likely or Unlikely?

A. Read the Paragraph

Aiden lives in California, where the weather is mild much of the year. He likes to bike to school. It takes him fifteen minutes to get there. He doesn't bike when it rains. He walks instead. Then it takes him thirty minutes. He doesn't like to walk because his books are heavy, but sometimes he can't help it. Aiden's friend drives. Aiden can call him and ask his friend for a ride. However, he must call him the night before. Sometimes, it rains unexpectedly in the morning, so Aiden walks in the rain. Fortunately, he has an umbrella, and he likes to walk.

can't help – cannot avoid **forecast** – predict something, especially weather **in time** – within the time, not from the beginning, but still able to do the activity **on time** – at the beginning set time of an activity

B. Decide if the action is likely or unlikely to occur. Circle the correct answer.

likely — probably will happen, probably is true. **unlikely** — probably won't happen, probably isn't true.

- If the weather is favorable this week, Aiden will bike to school.
Will Aiden bike to school? likely / unlikely
- If it's going to rain, Aiden will walk.
Is Aiden going to walk? likely / unlikely
- This morning it suddenly started raining. If Aiden called his friend, it would be too late to get a ride.
Is Aiden going to call his friend? likely / unlikely
- If Aiden had started walking earlier, he would get to school on time this morning.
Did Aiden begin walking early? likely / unlikely
- Aiden will make it in time to class if he walks fast.
Will Aiden walk fast? likely / unlikely
- If Aiden had checked the weather forecast the night before, he wouldn't be walking in the rain now.
Did Aiden check the weather forecast? likely / unlikely

Grammar-Quizzes > [Conditional](#) > Real vs. Unreal Conditional by [Julie Sevastopoulos](#) licensed under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#)

This page titled [6.1.1: Present Unreal \(Second\) Conditional](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

6.1.1.1: The "Be" Verb in Present Unreal Conditional

Present Unreal (Second) Conditional Statements with "Be"

STATEMENT	
In the present unreal conditional with the verb "to be," the form is the same for all subjects. In formal or written forms, we use the verb form " were ," not " was " for the pronoun subjects I/You/They and We, or similar nouns. In informal English, we usually use " was ." The result clause includes a would or could modal form.	
UNREAL CONDITION	IMAGINED RESULT
IF CLAUSE w/ SIMPLE PAST	CLAUSE w/ WOULD/COULD + VERB
If I were/was (informal) a millionaire,	I would buy a private jet.
If I were/was (informal) a millionaire,	I could buy a private jet.
It it weren't raining,	I would go for a walk in the park.
If I were you,*	I would buy a house.

* The "If I were you," statement is used to give advice.

NEGATIVE / QUESTION	
A negative is formed by placing not after the verb in the hypothetical clause or in the other clause. A question is formed by inverting the subject and auxiliary verb (would or could) in the result clause.	
UNREAL CONDITION	IMAGINED RESULT
IF CLAUSE w/ SIMPLE PAST	CLAUSE w/ WOULD/COULD + VERB
If I were/was a millionaire, (I am not)	I wouldn't travel on a commercial airline.
If I weren't /wasn't a millionaire, (I am)	I would have to travel like everyone else.
If I could vacation anywhere,	I wouldn't stay here.
If you were a millionaire,	could you stop working? 
If you could choose ,	would you move away? 

¹ repeating **could** is awkward

was / were – We often use **were** instead of **was** after **if**. Both **was** and **were** are used in formal English, but only If I were you,***If I were you...** **Were** is a subjunctive verb form.

This page titled [6.1.1.1: The "Be" Verb in Present Unreal Conditional](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

6.1.2: More Practice with Present Unreal (Second) Conditional

Exercise 6.3 : Chose the correct answer to complete the sentence in the form of Present Unreal Conditional

1. If there _____ no mosquitos, there would be no malaria.
A. would be B. are
C. were D. was
2. We'd be on the beach if we _____ in Mexico.
A. would be B. were
C. will be D. are
3. He's so stupid! If he _____ an animal, he would be a sheep.
A. were B. would be
C. is D. was
4. If her hair were black, she _____ completely different.
A. would look B. looks
C. will look D. look
5. If I _____ a penny for every can of soda I've drunk in my life, I would be rich!
A. would have B. have
C. will have D. had
6. We would learn a lot from dolphins if they _____.
A. talk B. can talk
C. could talk D. will talk
7. If smoking were allowed, I _____ a cigarette.
A. had B. would have
C. will have D. have
8. If the weather _____ better, we _____ to the park.
A. were... will go B. were... would go
C. is... would go D. was... go
9. We don't mind camping, but if we _____ enough money, we _____ in a hotel.
A. have... stayed B. had... would stay
C. would have...stayed D. had... stayed
10. If he were a young man, he _____ able to walk faster.
A. was B. would be
C. is D. would

Exercise 6.4: Fill in the blanks with the forms of the Present Unreal (Second) Conditional

1. If Joe _____ (be) here, he _____ (catch) some fish for supper.
2. It _____ (be) nice if the rain _____ (stop)!
3. I _____ (sing) you a song if I _____ (have) my guitar.
4. If I _____ (have) a better sleeping bag, I _____ (not feel) so cold.
5. If this tent _____ (be) any smaller, one of us _____ (have to sleep) outside!
6. I _____ (look) out for bears if I _____ (be) you!
7. If I _____ (not be) so hungry, 1. I _____ (share) my beans with you.

Exercises 1 and 2 from [UVIC Study Zone](#) licensed for use under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#).

Exercise 6.5: Fill in the blanks with the forms of the Present Unreal (Second) Conditional

1. If I _____ (be) you, I _____ (get) a new car.
2. If he _____ (be) younger, he _____ (sleep) less.
3. If we _____ (not / be) sisters, I _____ (not / talk) to you ever again.
4. If I _____ (have) enough money, I _____ (build) huge mansion.
5. If they _____ (not / be) always so messy, the house _____ (be) clean all the time.
6. If England _____ (win) the World Cup, I _____ (jump) for joy.
7. If you _____ (get) a pay rise, we _____ (go) to the Bahamas.
8. If we _____ (live) in Spain, I _____ (not / need) central heating.

Exercise 6.6: Answer the questions in complete sentences.

1. If you were an animal, which animal would you be? Why?
2. If you went back in time, which year would you go to? Why?
3. If you were a superhero, what would your powers be?
4. If you drove a sports car, which model would you drive?
5. If you became fluent in English overnight, what would you do next?
6. If you could take a vacation tomorrow, where would you go?
7. If you had three wishes, what would you wish for?

Exercises 3 and 4 from [We Love Teaching English](#) is licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution - Non-Commercial - No-Derivatives 4.0 International License](#)

This page titled [6.1.2: More Practice with Present Unreal \(Second\) Conditional](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

6.1.3: Past Unreal (Third) Conditional

Part 3: Past Unreal Conditional (hypothetical)

FORM: HAD + PAST PARTICIPLE

In a past unreal conditional structure, the verb in the condition statement, the **if**, clause takes the form of a **past perfect** verb.

If Jack **had seen** the iceberg,
(the hero in the Titanic movie)

If Rose **had known** it,
(the main character in the Titanic movie)

If Molly **had talked** any longer,
(a character in the movie)

If Cal **had been** a better man,
(the villain in the movie)

MODAL + HAVE + PARTICIPLE

The verb in the **result-clause**, also known as the main clause, takes the form of **would have, could have, or might have** + past participle.

he **would have told** the captain.

she **could have left** him earlier.

she **would have put** everyone to sleep.

he **might have acted** in a kinder manner.

Past Unreal (Third) Conditional (hypothetical)

Punctuation

INITIAL CLAUSE POSITION

➤ A comma separates the condition, a dependent clause headed by **if**, from the main clause when it is placed before the main clause.

If we had known the movie was long, we would have gotten some popcorn.

If we had gotten here earlier, we could have found better seats.

FINAL CLAUSE POSITION

🚫 No comma is used when the "**if clause**" is placed after the main clause.

We would have gotten some popcorn **if we had known the movie was long**.

We could have found better seats **if we had gotten here earlier**.

MEANING: PAST UNREAL – CONDITIONALS

In a **past unreal (remote) conditional structure**, modal **would have** expresses an alternate, perhaps ideal world. This "remote" wording is used to soften an unpleasant response, apologize for failure or consider an alternate option. See [Past Hypotheticals](#) for examples.

PAST	RELATED ACTIVITY OR SITUATION
If he had had time,	Ted would have mowed the grass.
REMOTE THINKING	
"This past action or situation, in another world.	caused this related activity to occur.
ACTUAL SITUATION	
This situation did not occur	so this related activity did not happen.

This page titled [6.1.3: Past Unreal \(Third\) Conditional](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

6.1.4: Practice with Past Unreal (Third) Conditional

Exercise 6.7: Fill the blanks with the correct **past unreal conditional** form of the verb in brackets.

1. If I _____ (go) to my parent's house last night, I _____ (miss) Sarah's visit.
2. If Joe _____ (buy) a new car, last year _____ (have) a large loan payment every month.
3. I _____ (go) to the wedding if I _____ (not / have) to work that weekend.
4. I _____ (not/recognize) her if you _____ (not/tell) me who she was.
5. Shelly _____ (go) on vacation if she _____ (not/spend) all that money.
6. I _____ (buy) you a present if I _____ (know) yesterday was your birthday.
7. I _____ (not/say) anything you if I _____ (realize) that you would get angry.
8. I _____ (come) sooner if someone _____ (mention) how much work there was.
9. I _____ (forgot) about it if you _____ (not/bring) it up.
10. He _____ (help) you if you _____ (ask) him.

Exercise 6.8: Read the sentence about the situation (what happened). Then fill in the blanks with the forms of the Past Unreal (Third) Conditional using the appropriate affirmative or negative forms.

1. He crashed his car, because he fell asleep while driving.
If he _____ asleep while driving, he _____ his car.
2. We couldn't go to the concert because we didn't have enough money.
If we _____ enough money, we _____ to the concert.
3. I lost my job because I was late for work.
I _____ my job if I _____ late for work
4. The wind was so strong that the bridge collapsed.
If the wind _____ so strong, the bridge _____ .
5. I couldn't call Sally because I had lost her number.
I _____ Sally if I _____ her number.

Exercise 6.9: The Titanic and Past Unreal (Third) Conditional

A. Read the Context

When we analyze a catastrophe such as the sinking of the Titanic, we look closely at the errors that led to the disaster. Some of the errors in the *Titanic* disaster involved the following:

- poor ship design
- speed of the *Titanic*

- number of lifeboats
- use of binoculars
- angle of impact
- emergency response time of the *Titanic* crew
- emergency response of other ships
- number of people in lifeboats
- accessibility of lifeboats (to all classes)

B. Determine which verb forms logically complete the hypothetical statement.

Select the response from the list that best completes the sentence.

1. If the White Star Line (had / had had) more lifeboats, most of the people (survived / would survive / would have survived).
2. If the watchmen (located / had located) their binoculars before they left England, they (would use / would have used / had used) them to help the captain spot icebergs.
3. If ship planners (had designed / would design / designed) more safety compartments to keep the ship afloat, the *Titanic* (had stayed / might have stayed) afloat until the ship, *Carpathia*, arrived.
4. If the Captain (would steer / had steered / steered) directly into the iceberg, the ship (might had / had had / might have had) less damage.
5. If the ship's crew (had reacted / would react) more efficiently, help (had come / would have come) more quickly.
6. The *California*, a ship nearby, (would have received / had received) the emergency call if the radio-operator (would have / had had / had) his radio turned on for emergency calls.
7. If the White Star line (would supply / had supplied) the ship with enough life-jackets, all the bodies (had been found / would have been found) .
8. More people (had survived / would have survived) if the crew (had filled / would fill) the lifeboats completely.
9. Third-class passengers in compartments below deck (might have / might have had) a chance if the crew (had not locked / have not locked) them below deck.

C. For each question, consider the given information about the *Titanic* and write a past unreal statement about what could have happened differently to change the outcome. Some answers require the use of "could" rather than "would" in the main clause.

1. White Star Lines spent more money on advertising than on safety. If White Star Lines had spent more money on safety, they could have saved more lives.
2. The company only conducted one practice session to simulate an emergency situation, so the crew did not know how to handle an emergency.
3. The captain ignored early reports of icebergs, so he didn't change course.
4. White Star Lines told the public that the *Titanic* was unsinkable, so the passengers did not know that it was unsafe.
5. The doors to the third class compartment were locked, so third class passengers could not escape.

Exercises adapted from [UVIC Study Zone](#) licensed for use under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#). Part C-Original content

This page titled [6.1.4: Practice with Past Unreal \(Third\) Conditional](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

6.1.5: Mixed Conditionals

Mixed Conditional : Hypothetical situations in mixed time frames

The two parts of a conditional sentence can refer to different times, and the resulting sentence is a "mixed conditional" sentence. Mixed conditional sentences can involve a past event with a present result or a present condition and an earlier past event.



Past Events Affect Present Situations

Compare the REAL SITUATION in the first chart with the corresponding HYPOTHETICAL SITUATIONS in the second and third charts.

REAL SITUATION

When a cause-effect situation occurs in different time frames, it can be stated as a fact.

Past → Present

You **did not feed** the dog, so the dog **is** hungry now.

You **fed** the dog, so the dog **isn't** hungry now. (She is content.)

The dog **couldn't go** outside, so the dog **peed** on the floor.

The dog **went** outside, so the dog **didn't** pee on the floor.

The dog **didn't go** outside, so the dog **is** peeing on the floor now.

HYPOTHETICAL SITUATION

PAST CONDITION-PRESENT RESULT

A past hypothetical or unreal event or situation has a present result. This can be used to express criticism or praise.

PAST EVENT (Past Unreal-Third Conditional)

PRESENT RESULT (Present Unreal-Second Conditional)

If you **had fed** the dog, she **wouldn't be** hungry now. (*criticism*)

If you **hadn't fed** the dog, she **would be** hungry now. Thank you! (*praise*)

If the dog **had gone** outside, she **wouldn't have peed** on the floor. (*regret/criticism*)

If the dog **hadn't gone** outside, she **would have peed** on the floor. (*praise*)

If the dog **had gone** outside, she **wouldn't be peeing** on the floor now. (*regret/criticism*)

Present Conditions with Results in the Past

PRESENT CONDITION/PAST RESULT

A present hypothetical or unreal situation has a past result

PRESENT EVENT (Present Unreal-Second Conditional)

PAST RESULT (Past Unreal-Third Conditional)

If I **spoke** English more fluently, I **wouldn't have had** so many problems.

If I **weren't** a woman, they **would have given** me the job.

If I **had** a car, I **would have driven** you to work.

If I **were working**, I **could have bought** a new car instead of a used car.

Exercise 6.10

Pet Problems

Mixed Tense Hypothetical Sentences

Select the response from the list that best completes the sentence.



1. Your office chair has wheels, so the dog is pushing the chair around the room.

If the chair **didn't have** wheels, the dog (won't be pushing / wouldn't be pushing / wouldn't have been pushing) it around the room now.

2. The dog learned how to push the chair next to the kitchen counter. As a result, the dog is walking on the kitchen counter now!

If the dog (didn't learn/ hadn't learned) to push the chair next to the kitchen counter, it **wouldn't be walking** on the kitchen counter now!



3. **You did not neuter your cat, so now there are too many kittens.** If you **had neutered** your cat, there (weren't / wouldn't be / wouldn't have been) so many kittens now.

neuter (V) – to remove an animal's ability to reproduce



4. **You left your dogs at home alone all day, so they are begging you for a walk now.**

If you (left / didn't leave / hadn't left) your dogs at home alone all day, they **wouldn't be begging** your for a walk now.

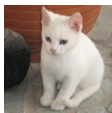


5. **The goats are not kept in a pen, so the goats blocked the road yesterday.**

If the goats **were** kept in a pen , they (would block / wouldn't have blocked / would block) the road.

6. **There was a sufficient amount of (enough) rain this spring, so now there is plenty of grass for the farm animals to eat.**

If there (hadn't been / had been / wouldn't have been) a sufficient amount of rain this spring, there **wouldn't be** enough grass for the farm animals to eat now.



7. **The kitten is too small. She didn't harm the baby.**

If the kitten **were** bigger, she (might have harmed / harmed / couldn't have harmed) the baby.



8. **You didn't socialize your dog at an early age, so now your dog barks at all the other dogs on the beach.**

Your dog (won't be barking / wouldn't be barking / wouldn't have been barking) at all the other dogs on the beach if you **had socialized** your dog from an early age.

Mixed Conditionals			
All types of conditionals can be mixed. Any tense combination is possible if the context permits it.			
	If-clause	Main clause	
Type 2	If they were working all day, (They were working all day)	they will be tired now. so they are tired now.)	Type 1
Type 2	If I were you, (You are not me) If he were a better driver, (He is not a good driver)	I would have accepted the job. so you didn't accept the job.) he wouldn't have crashed the car. so he crashed the car.)	Type 3
Type 3	If she had finished earlier, (She didn't finish earlier)	she would be going to the party tonight. so she isn't going to the party.)	Type 2

Chart from [My English Blog](#) created in WordPress by [aliciateacher](#)

Page remixed from [Grammar Quizzes](#) by [Julie Sevastopoulos](#) is licensed for use under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#). Edited for B1 ESOL level.

This page titled [6.1.5: Mixed Conditionals](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

6.1.6: Conditionals-Review

Review: All Conditionals

These exercises will help you to review a variety of different real and unreal conditionals.

Exercise 6.11: Choose the correct conditional form.

All conditionals

1. Unfortunately, I don't know philosophy, so I can't answer your question.
 - A. If I know philosophy, I will be able to answer your question.
 - B. If I know philosophy, I can answer your question.
 - C. If I knew philosophy, I would be able to answer your question.
 - D. If I had known philosophy, I would have been able to answer your question.
2. I want to buy a Porsche, but I don't have enough money.
 - A. If I had enough money, I would buy a Porsche.
 - B. If I have enough money, I buy a Porsche.
 - C. If I have enough money, I will buy a Porsche.
 - D. If I had had enough money, I would have bought a Porsche.
3. He stepped on the mine, and it exploded.
 - A. If he doesn't step on the mine, it doesn't explode.
 - B. If he didn't step on the mine, it wouldn't explode.
 - C. If he doesn't step on the mine, it won't explode.
 - D. If he hadn't stepped on the mine, it wouldn't have exploded.
4. It may rain this afternoon. I hope it doesn't because I don't want the match to be cancelled.
 - A. If it rains, the match will be cancelled.
 - B. If it rains, the match is cancelled.
 - C. If it rained, the match would be cancelled.
 - D. If it had rained, the match would have been cancelled.
5. You ignored my advice, so you got into trouble!
 - A. If you don't ignore my advice, you don't get into trouble.
 - B. If you don't ignore my advice, you won't get into trouble.
 - C. If you hadn't ignored my advice, you wouldn't have got into trouble.
 - D. If you didn't ignore my advice, you wouldn't get into trouble.
6. In my experiments, the liquid is cooled to 32 degrees. It always freezes.
 - A. If you cooled the liquid to 32 degrees, it will freeze.
 - B. If you cooled the liquid to 32 degrees, it would freeze.
 - C. If you had cooled the liquid to 32 degrees, it would have frozen.
 - D. If you cool the liquid to 32 degrees, it freezes.

Exercise 6.12: Choose the combination of verb forms that makes a real or unreal conditional.

1. If water (reaches/will reach/would reach) 100 degrees, it (boiled/will boil/would boil).
2. If those eggs (were/are/will be) rotten, they (smelled/would smell) bad.
3. If there (was/had been/would have been) good weather last Saturday, I (would go/would have gone) to the park.

4. If John (took /takes/will take) the bus to work tomorrow, the journey (was/is/will be) faster.
5. If it (snowed/ had snowed/ would have snowed) last week, school (had been/would be/would have been) closed.
6. If Clara (were/is/would be) taller, she (will be/would have been) picked for the basketball team.
7. If I (had/had had/have) four hands, I (would have/would have had) 20 fingers.
8. If Matthew (took/had taken/would have taken) the train yesterday, he (had arrived/would arrive/would have arrived) in the city earlier.
9. If you (asked/would ask/would have asked) me to come with you to the swimming pool, I (will join/would join/would have joined) you.

Exercise 6.13: Match up the beginnings and ends of the following sentences. Write the sentence completions in the blanks.

1. If I had been selected for an the interview, I am sure I _____
2. If Matthew eats too much tomorrow, he _____
3. If I could live in any city, I _____
4. If I had rested more yesterday, I _____
5. If I could read your mind, I _____
6. If it is sunny tomorrow, we _____
7. If I could meet any person from history, I _____
8. If Peter had sold his car last week, he _____
9. If we go to the beach _____ in the ocean.
10. If Sarah meets me next Friday, I _____

...would live in Paris

...would have to take the bus to get to work now.

...will swim.

...will go for a walk in the park.

...will get a stomachache.

...will tell her about my vacation....would like to meet Vincent Van Gogh.

...would have been less tired.

...would know your thoughts.

...would have gotten the job.

This page titled [6.1.6: Conditionals-Review](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

7: Adjective Clauses

- [7.1: Introduction to Adjective Clauses/Defining and Non-Defining Adjective Clauses](#)
- [7.2: Subject and Object Relative \(Adjective\) Clauses](#)
- [7.3: Reducing Adjective Clauses](#)
- [7.4: Adjective Clauses with Whose](#)
- [7.5: Common Errors with Adjective Clauses](#)
- [7.6: Adjective Clauses with When and Where](#)
- [7.7: Practice with When and Where Adjective Clauses](#)

This page titled [7: Adjective Clauses](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

7.1: Introduction to Adjective Clauses/Defining and Non-Defining Adjective Clauses

Grammar Presentation-Adjective Clauses

Adjective clauses are dependent clauses that describe nouns. Adjective clauses use relative pronouns to replace the noun they are describing. Some adjective clauses give necessary information to understand which noun they are describing. Other adjective clauses give extra information.

Relative Pronouns

Relative pronouns usually begin adjective clauses although there are some exceptions that will be covered later.

Relative Pronoun	Reference	Grammatical Function
which	specific things (non-human)-used with commas	subject, object, or object of a preposition
that	general things or people-not used with commas	subject or object
who	people	subject
whom	people	object or object of a preposition
whose	possessive pronouns or nouns (his, her, its, their)	subject or object
when	time	object
where	place	object

Table 15 Relative Pronouns

 Video-For more information on this topic, watch this video: [Relative Pronouns & Clauses-English Grammar Lesson](#)

Defining and Non-Defining Clauses (aka Identifying and Non-Identifying or Restrictive and Non-Restrictive Clauses)

A **defining clause** is an adjective clause that **provides important information to help the reader identify or understand the noun it is describing**. It is important to understand defining clauses because they **do not require commas**. **Non-defining clauses provide additional information about the referent noun**. The reader can identify the noun without using the adjective clause.

Note: The relative pronoun "that" cannot be used in non-defining clauses

Defining Clause: The girl *who/that is sitting in the front* is new. (The adjective clause is necessary to identify the girl. Both relative pronouns *that* and *who* can be used here.)

Non-Defining Clause: Mariam, *who is absent today*, speaks K'iche. (The adjective clause is not necessary. It adds extra information about the girl. The relative pronoun *that* cannot be used here.)

If I asked you, "Do you know the girl?" You would probably respond, "Which girl?" My response to you would define or identify which girl I am referring to. This is the case in the first example above. Therefore, no commas are necessary. In the second example, there is a name, so it is likely you know the reference. Therefore, there are commas around the adjective clause. In the above examples, both adjective clauses are referring to a person, but what happens when the noun is non-human?

Defining Clause: The car *that/which is in my driveway* is my brother's. (The adjective clause identifies which car you are referring to. Both relative pronouns *that* and *which* can be used here)

Non-Defining Clause: My car, *which needs new tires*, rides roughly. (You know which car the speaker is referring to-It is the one that belongs to me "my car." The relative pronoun *that* cannot be used here.)

In the first example, the noun (car) is general. It's likely you are not sure which car I am referring to until I say, "that is in my driveway". However, in the second example I say, "my car" and this is specific, so the relative pronoun "which" and commas are used.

For more information on this topic, watch these videos: [Commas or No Commas? Defining vs. Non-Defining Relative Clauses](#)

Exercise 7.1-Defining and Non-Defining Clauses

Read the sentences below. Highlight or underline the adjective clause and choose whether the adjective clause is defining or non-defining.

1. The United States, which has the highest incarceration rate in the world, is experiencing a crisis.
a. Defining b. Non-Defining
2. The country whose economy is collapsing has not responded to its citizens' needs.
a. Defining b. Non-Defining
3. The radio station that plays soft rock has poor reception near the freeway.
a. Defining b. Non-Defining
4. My favorite radio station, which often plays Stevie Nicks, is available on Sirius XM.
a. Defining b. Non-Defining
5. The woman who smokes in her car works for an office that prohibits smoking on its property.
a. Defining b. Non-Defining

Page from [High Intermediate Academic Grammar](#) for ESL Students Licensed under [Creative Commons Attribution](#) revised for format and content.

Exercise 7.2

Read each sentence. Highlight or underline the adjective clause. Then, add commas where necessary. Only use commas when the adjective clause is "non-defining." (It does not identify the subject. It just adds extra information about the subject.)

1. The new coronavirus which causes the disease COVID-19 has infected millions of people globally.
2. The disease was first detected in Wuhan which is a city in China where 11 million residents have been living isolated in quarantine for months.
3. The disease is spread by droplets which are sprayed into the air when an infected person coughs or sneezes.
4. Infection can be transmitted if a person touches objects or surfaces that an infected person has coughed and sneezed on and then touches their mouth, nose, or face.
5. Many people who carry and spread the disease show few or no symptoms.
6. For people whose health is already impacted by heart disease, diabetes, or other underlying conditions, COVID-19 can be very deadly.

"Exercise 7.2" is adapted from *Coalescence Companion Handouts/Workbook* licensed for use under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#) Edited for local terminology

This page titled [7.1: Introduction to Adjective Clauses/Defining and Non-Defining Adjective Clauses](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

7.2: Subject and Object Relative (Adjective) Clauses

Subject Relative Pronouns

Adjective clauses are made when two sentences are combined to avoid repetition of nouns or pronouns. When the repeated noun or pronoun is a subject in the second sentence, the relative pronoun that replaces the noun or pronoun will be the subject of the adjective clause.

Sentence 1: The person left my car parked on Main Street.

Sentence 2: The person stole my car.

Combined: The person who stole my car left it parked on Main Street

Let's break down the steps taken to create the combined sentence.

1. The second sentence describes what the subject of the first sentence did. Adjective clauses need to be next to the noun they describe. Move the sentence next to the noun it's describing.

The person [The person stole my car.] left it parked on Main Street

2. Replace the repeated noun or pronoun with the appropriate relative pronoun. In this case, the subject of the main clause is a person, so my two options are who or that depending on whether the clause is defining or non-defining.

The person [~~The person~~ who stole my car.] left it parked on Main Street

3. The final step is to punctuate the clause depending on whether the clause is defining or non-defining. In this example, the clause is defining, so no commas are necessary.

The person who stole my car left it parked on Main Street

 For more information on this topic, watch this video: [Subject Relative \(Adjective\) Clause](#)

Exercise 7.3-Creating Adjective Clauses with Subject Relative Pronouns

Combine the sentences below. Use the second sentence as the adjective clause. The adjective clauses may be **defining** or **non-defining**. Use commas where needed.

1. My friend studies engineering. She is from Oman.
2. The man has five cars. He lives on my street.
3. The restaurant is always busy. It serves halal meat.
4. The movie was fantastic! It was directed by Ava DuVernay.
5. Shawshank Redemption is one of the best movies. It was released in 1994.
6. McDonald's is an international fast-food company. It was founded in 1955 in California.
7. The student needs a break. She just finished a four-hour exam.
8. Zahra needs a break. She just finished a 5-mile run.
9. My mom visits her grandchildren often. She loves her grandchildren. (Change grandchildren to a pronoun after the sentences are combined so that the word is not repeated)
10. The classes are full. The classes cover popular topics.

Object Relative Pronouns

When the repeated noun or pronoun is an object in the second sentence, the relative pronoun that replaces the noun or pronoun will begin the adjective clause and replace the object of the adjective clause's original sentence.

Sentence 1: The woman likes square dancing.

Sentence 2: You met the woman at the party.

Combined: The woman *who/whom you met at the party* likes square dancing.

Let's break down the steps taken to create the combined sentence.

1. The second sentence has a noun or pronoun repeated from the first sentence. The repeated noun or pronoun is the object of the second sentence. Adjective clauses need to be next to the noun they describe. Move the sentence next to the noun it's describing.

The woman [You met the woman at the party.] likes square dancing.

2. Replace the repeated noun or pronoun with the appropriate relative pronoun. The relative pronoun will not be in the same position as the noun or pronoun it replaces. The relative pronoun will begin the clause. For choosing which relative pronoun to use, the subject of the main clause is a person, so my two options are *who* or *whom* (used for people and function as objects) or *that* depending on whether the clause is defining or non-defining.

The woman [*who/whom* You met ~~the woman~~ at the party.] likes square dancing.

3. The final step is to punctuate the clause depending on whether the clause is defining or non-defining. In this example, the clause is defining, so no commas are necessary.

The woman *who/whom you met at the party* likes square dancing.

Note: "Whom" is used in formal language. With object relative pronouns, "who" is more common than "whom" in both spoken and written language.

 Video-For more information on this topic, watch this video: [Object Relative \(Adjective\) Clauses](#)

Exercise 7.4-Creating Adjective Clauses with Object Relative Pronouns

Combine the sentences below. Use the second sentence as the adjective clause so that the relative pronoun functions as the object.

1. The book was interesting. We read it last summer.
2. The movie was very powerful. I just finished it.
3. The man is from Sucre, Bolivia. I met him yesterday.
4. The essay has great development. You wrote it.
5. The museum has an exhibit for Día de Los Muertos. We will visit it next week.
6. The cookies were delicious. Christina made them.
7. The teacher explains topics very well. I visit her during office hours.
8. The politician had created helpful laws for the people she represented. The senate honored her.
9. The land was not valuable. The government gave it to the indigenous population.

Page from [High Intermediate Academic Grammar](#) for ESL Students Licensed under [Creative Commons Attribution](#)

This page titled [7.2: Subject and Object Relative \(Adjective\) Clauses](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

7.3: Reducing Adjective Clauses

Reducing Adjective Clauses

Adjective clauses can be modified to create adjective or prepositional phrases or [appositives](#). A clause has a subject and a verb, but a phrase does not contain both, creating a reduced form.

Reducing Clauses with Be Verbs

If an adjective clause has the relative pronouns *who*, *which*, or *that* followed by a *be* verb, you can typically (see exceptions later) delete the relative pronoun and the *be* verb. Let's explore these examples.

1. The girl ~~who is~~ *sitting in the front* is new.
2. Mariam, *who is absent today*, speaks K'iche.
3. The author, ~~who is~~ *Dr. Bettina L. Love*, is an associate professor at University of Georgia.
4. The car ~~that is~~ *in my driveway* is my brother's.
5. The researchers, ~~who are~~ *led by plant geneticist Philipp Simon*, have not limited themselves to the color orange.

- In example 1, the relative pronoun *who* and the *be* verb *is* are deleted. This deletion creates an adjective phrase *sitting in the front*.
- However, in example 2, the relative pronoun and *be* verb cannot be deleted because what would be left is just an adjective. (It is an [adjective complement](#) clause.) For example, if I said, "The fruit, which is fresh, stays in the refrigerator" and try to reduce this clause, then it will read "The fruit fresh stays in the refrigerator." Why not just write "The fresh fruit"?
- The third example can be reduced, and this is called an appositive. It is a noun or synonym for the [antecedent](#) noun. In the fourth example, the reduction creates a prepositional phrase. Finally, the last example creates a type of adjective phrase.

Reducing Clauses with Non-Be Verbs

When the verb following the relative pronouns *that*, *which*, and *who* are **not** a *be* verb, as in the **simple present** and **simple past** tenses, then you can delete the relative pronoun and change the verb to the **-ing form** (present participle). Let's look at the following examples.

1. Anyone ~~who wants~~ *wanting to participate* should contact a counselor.
2. Ten percent of the Earth is covered with glaciers ~~which consist~~ *consisting of 75% of the Earth's fresh water*.
3. My sister, ~~who claimed~~ *claiming to be sick*, convinced my mother to allow her to stay home from school.
4. Students ~~who planned~~ *planning to get a bachelor's degree* were required to take the Student Success course.

Let's summarize the rules:

Be verb follows a relative pronoun: delete the relative pronoun and be verb (unless an adjective follows the be verb).

Non-be verb follows a relative pronoun: delete the relative pronoun, change the verb to -ing form.

For more information on this topic, watch this video: [Reducing Adjective Clauses to Adjective Phrases: Learn English Grammar with JenniferESL](#)

Exercise 7.5-Reducing Adjective Clauses

Read the sentences and select the best phrase to replace the adjective clause according to the rules of reducing adjective clauses.

1. The students who want to meet with a tutor should put their names here.
 - a. want to meet with a tutor
 - b. wanted to meet with a tutor
 - c. wanting to meet with a tutor
 - d. no reduction possible

2. The books that Mayra placed on the back table have disappeared.
 - a. being placed on the back table
 - b. were placed on the back table
 - c. placed on the back table
 - d. no reduction possible
3. The cities that are located east of the river have access to more water.
 - a. that located east of the river
 - b. being located east of the river
 - c. located east of the river
 - d. no reduction possible
4. Spiderman, who has great strength and responsibility, tracks down Cindy Moon.
 - a. having great strength and responsibility
 - b. had great strength and responsibility
 - c. no reduction possible
5. Spiderman is a superhero who was created by Stan Lee.
 - a. being created by Stan Lee
 - b. created by Stan Lee
 - c. no reduction possible
6. Captain America, who is a Marvel superhero, first appeared in 1941.
 - a. being a Marvel superhero
 - b. a Marvel superhero
 - c. no reduction possible

Exercise 7.6: Reducing Adjective Clause

A. Read the Content

A talk show host who is trying to get better ratings often tries to outdo the other talk show hosts who are on television at the same time. A talk show host who is watched by "regulars" tends to have consistently high ratings. To attract regulars, a talk show host has to have on celebrities who are starring in current movies or average people who are doing exceptional things. Talk shows that have on authors who are selling their books, or dog owners who are showing pet tricks tend to lose regular viewers.

A host who is resourceful will create some controversy. A controversy that is about the talk show host's bad behavior can lead to cancelation. A sexy, young actress who is dancing on the host's desk gets the attention of the entertainment review shows. The entertainment show that is aired at an earlier hour will show scenes that interest viewers to watch a show that is at a later hour. The more exposure that a show receives, the better it is for the host.

A strong sense of what viewers want to see and high visibility on other shows indicates a clever host who is improving his ratings.

controversy (N) — a subject that attracts differing opinions, argument, or debate

exposure (N) — make something public; known widely

host (N) — person who receives or entertains guests (the MC of a show)

mark (V) — be a distinguishing feature

outdo (V) — excel, do more than others do

regulars (N) — people who habitually or routinely do something

resourceful (Adj) — able to deal skillfully and promptly with new situations or difficulties

B. Edit the sentence by reducing the underlined adjective clauses if possible. Write the sentence below each question.

1. A talk show host who is trying to get better ratings often tries to outdo the other talk show hosts who are on television.

Edit 1:

2. A talk show host who is watched by "regulars" tends to have consistently high ratings.

Edit 2:

3. To attract regular viewers, a talk show host has to have on celebrities who are starring in current movies or average people who are doing exceptional things.

Edit 3:

4. Talk shows that invite authors who are selling their books, or dog owners who are showing pet tricks tend to lose regular viewers.

Edit 4:

5. A host who is resourceful will create some controversy.

Edit 5:

6. A controversy that is about the bad behavior of talk show host can result in cancellation.

Edit 6:

7. A sexy, young actress who is dancing on a host's desk gets the attention of the entertainment review shows.

Edit 7:

8. The entertainment show that is aired at an earlier hour will show scenes that interest viewers to watch a show that is at a later hour.

Edit 8:

9. The more exposure that a show receives, the better that it is for the host.

Edit 9:

10. A strong sense of what viewers want to see and high visibility on other shows indicates a clever host who is improving his ratings.

Edit 10:

Exercises 2 and 3 from [Grammar Quizzes](#) by Julie Sevastopoulos licensed for use under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#)

Page from [High Intermediate Academic Grammar](#) for ESL Students Licensed under [Creative Commons Attribution](#)

This page titled [7.3: Reducing Adjective Clauses](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

7.4: Adjective Clauses with Whose

Whose Clauses

Whose can be used as relative pronouns to show possession. The following content will explain how and why it is used.



Forming a Whose-Clause

Whose as Subject or Object of the Adjective Clause

SUBJECT OF AN ADJECTIVE CLAUSE

Whose replaces the possessive form in the adjective clause. The clause is then moved to a position after the noun it modifies.

The woman is the guest speaker. The woman's name is Carrie.

The woman is the guest speaker. Her name is Carrie.

The woman	Her name is Carrie.	is the guest speaker.
The woman	whose name is Carrie	is the guest speaker.

The man is a doctor. His show is entertaining.

The doctor is successful. His advice is amusing.

The man	whose show is entertaining subject-verb-adjective	is a doctor.
The doctor	whose advice is amusing	is successful on TV.

OBJECT OF AN ADJECTIVE CLAUSE

Whose replaces the possessive form of an object in the adjective clause, which is placed after the personal noun it modifies.

The woman is the guest speaker. You met the woman's son.

The woman is the guest speaker. You met her son.

The woman	You met her son	is the guest speaker.
The woman	whose son you met	is the guest speaker.

The man is a doctor. We watch his show.

The doctor is successful. We value his advice .

The man	whose show we watch object-subject-verb	is a doctor.
The doctor	whose advice we value	is successful on TV.

Add commas if the clause adds extra information that is not essential to identifying who the person is. (a non-identifying, non-restrictive clause)

See [Some or All](#) and [That vs Which](#) Related pages: [That vs. Which](#) using commas | [Who / Whom](#) using that for people

Punctuation: Identifying (Restrictive) vs. Nonidentifying (Non-Restrictive) Clause

IDENTIFYING CLAUSES

A clause that identifies the noun before it (tells you which person) is not set off with commas. No commas are used.

You met the woman whose first name is Carrie.

The man whose TV show is popular is a doctor.

NONIDENTIFYING CLAUSES

A clause that adds extra, nonidentifying (non-restrictive) information is set off with comma(s). See [Commas](#)

You met Arianna, whose first name is Carrie.

Dr. Oz, whose TV show is popular, is a doctor.

An **identifying clause** (restrictive clause) adds information or narrows the noun to a specific one, group or lot. The clause helps by telling us **which one**. No commas are used. It is also called *restrictive*, *essential*, or *necessary clause*. See [That vs. Which Some or All](#).

A **nonidentifying clause** (non-restrictive clause) adds extra information about a noun already identified by other means, for example, by name, by shared knowledge or context. The clause, a comment, is set off with commas (before and, if necessary, after the clause). It is also called *nonrestrictive*, *nonessential*, or *unnecessary clause*. See [Commas – comments](#).

Errors and Solutions

ERROR

*The runner **who his** balloons popped ran to the finish line naked!

*The woman whose husband we chatted with **him** lives next door.

*The woman **who her** husband is from Uruguay is going to be the CEO of the company.

*The woman **who's** father owns the company will take over running the business.

Solution

The runner whose balloons popped ran to the finish line naked!

The woman whose husband we chatted with lives next door.

The woman whose husband is from Uruguay is going to be the CEO of the company. (*Change who her to whose.*)

*The woman **whose** father owns the company will take over running the business.

*incorrect

Exercise 7.7 :Kinship Names

A. Read for Errors

My mother's brother's daughter just gave birth to a baby. What should I call this relative?

A **sibling** is a person whose a brother or sister.

Two people are called **siblings** whose mother and father are the same.

A person whose mother is also yours is called your **sibling**.

A person who his mother is your aunt is called your **cousin**.

People are called **cousins** whose grandparents are the same.

People who are not siblings but who their great grandparents are the same are **second cousins**.

The term **once removed** is used for people whose generation differs by one. (The grandparent of one is the great-grandparent of the other.)

The baby whose mother is my **cousin** is my **cousin once removed**.

The person is the smallest person in the family whose kinship name is the longest.

B. Decide whether the use and placement of the whose-clause is correct or incorrect. If it is incorrect, write the correction on the line. (Don't worry about the kinship terms!)

Select the response **correct** or **incorrect**.

1. A *sibling* is a person whose a brother or sister.

Correct Incorrect: Correction _____

2. Two people are called *siblings* whose mother and father are the same.

Correct Incorrect: Correction _____

3. A person whose mother is also yours is called your *sibling*.

Correct Incorrect: Correction _____

4. A person who his mother is your aunt is called *cousin*.

Correct Incorrect: Correction _____

5. People are called *cousins* whose grandparents are the same.

Correct Incorrect: Correction _____

6. People who are not siblings but who their great grandparents are the same are *second cousins*.

Correct Incorrect: Correction _____

7. The term *once removed* is used for people whose generation differs by one.

Correct Incorrect: Correction _____

8. A baby whose mother is my *cousin* is my *cousin once removed*.

Correct Incorrect: Correction _____

9. The person is the youngest person in the family whose kinship name is the longest.

Correct Incorrect: Correction _____

"Cousin." *Wikipedia, The Free Encyclopedia*, 23 Aug. 2016, <http://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Cousin>. Accessed on 25 Aug. 2016.

Exercise 7.8-Create Adjective Clauses Using Whose

Combine the sentences below to create a defining or non-defining adjective clauses. Use the second sentence as the adjective clause so that the relative pronoun shows possession (whose).

1. The singer has worked hard to break through. Her song is on the charts.

2. We read a book. Its story transforms readers into a magical place.

3. The student easily passed the class. His essays were flawless.

4. Henry is my 5-year-old son. His favorite color is red.

5. I visited the city. I will attend its college next year.

6. Hadi cried for a while. Hadi's toy was taken by another child.

7. I thanked the woman. I used her pen.

8. Marie lives next door to me. Her hometown is Paris, France.

Grammar Quizzes by Julie Sevastopoulos is licensed for use under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#).

This page titled 7.4: Adjective Clauses with Whose is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Allyson Marceau.

7.5: Common Errors with Adjective Clauses

Subject-Verb Agreement

A common error when writing adjective clauses is choosing the wrong verb form. Keep in mind that the verb must agree with the antecedent noun or pronoun.

1. The car that is in the driveway needs a new tire.
2. The cars that are in the street need to be moved.

Notice in the first example how the verb is in the adjective clause and need in the main clause agree with the antecedent noun car. In the second example, the subject is plural (cars), so the verbs in both the adjective clause and the main clause agree in number.

Exercise 7.9-Choosing the Right Verb

Choose the correct verb to complete the sentence according to the antecedent noun.

1. The Pacific Ocean is the world's largest ocean that _____ from the Arctic in the north to the Southern Ocean in the south.
 - a. extend
 - b. extends
 - c. extended
2. The tools that _____ stolen _____ to be replaced.
 - a. is, needs
 - b. were, need
 - c. was, needs
3. The reports that _____ submitted by the team _____ still incomplete.
 - a. were, was
 - b. were, were
 - c. are, are
4. The teacher who tutors the advanced students _____ leaving early today.
 - a. tutors , is
 - b. tutor , is
 - c. tutors, are
5. The buildings that _____ damaged by the storm _____ being repaired now.
 - a. were, are
 - b. was, was
 - c. were, were
6. The packages that arrived for the employee in the front office _____ on the front desk.
 - a. is
 - b. are
7. Sarah wants to buy the sofas that _____ in the window display of the department store.
 - a. is
 - b. are
 - c. was

6. The team that _____ the last game of the semi-finals _____ on to the finals.
- wins, goes
 - win, go
 - wins, go

Repeating the Subject or Object

In adjective clauses, a relative pronoun replaces the subject or object in the dependent clause. A common error is to write both the relative pronoun and the subject or object.

- The man who ~~he~~ drove us home last night works for a taxi company.
- The book that I bought ~~it~~ online arrives tomorrow.

In the first example, the relative pronoun who should replace the subject pronoun he, so both who and he should not be in the adjective clause. Also, in the second example the relative pronoun that replaces the object pronoun it.

Placement

Adjective clauses should be next to the nouns they modify. When they are not placed correctly, the meaning could be different than intended.

- The restaurant served a plate to the woman that was dirty.
- The restaurant served a plate that was dirty to the woman.

Because the adjective clause in the first example is next to the noun woman, then the reader thinks that the woman was dirty. However, the intended meaning was that the plate was dirty, so the adjective clause should be next to the plate (the noun it is modifying).

Exercise 7.10-Fixing Repeated Subjects/Object and Placement Errors

Find and correct the errors in the sentences that contain adjective clauses.

- The book that I bought it through Amazon arrived late.
- I went to the shopping mall with my friend that is the biggest in America.
- The rooms that they will meet in them will be prepared.
- The photographer took pictures of our hiking trip who works for National Geographic.
- The man changed my car's tires whom I cannot find him now.

Page from [High Intermediate Academic Grammar](#) for ESL Students Licensed under [Creative Commons Attribution](#)

This page titled [7.5: Common Errors with Adjective Clauses](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

7.6: Adjective Clauses with When and Where

“When” and
“Where” as
Relative
Pronouns :
Never the
subject of the
adjective
clause

- **When** = always refers to a noun that is a unit of **time**
- In many situations, *when* begins an adverb clause.
 - When I was a child, I loved ice cream.
- In a few situations, *when* can be a relative pronoun.
 - I remember the day when we met.
 - She forgot the time when they left the suitcases in the house.
 - The group agreed on a date when the next meeting would take place.
- **Where** = always refers to a noun that is a **place**
- *Where* cannot be the subject of an adjective clause.
- Miami is a city where many immigrants live.

Miami is a city.

Many immigrants live there.

- The researchers looked for the lake where the toxic waste was deposited.

When / Where

WHEN

When replaces the **object noun** in the modifying clause. The pronoun is *fronted* (moved to the front of the clause). Then the clause is placed directly after the noun that it modifies. **When** serves as a connector to the noun in the main clause.

The year was memorable. **You were born in that year.**

The year was memorable. You were born **then**.

	OBJECT of MOD CLS	
The year	you were born then ↙	was memorable.
	when	
The year	when you were born	was memorable.

WHERE

Where replaces the **object noun** in the modifying clause. The pronoun is *fronted* (moved to the front of the clause). Then the clause is placed directly after the noun that it modifies. **Where** serves as a connector to the noun in the main clause.

The city is beautiful. **You live in the city.**

The city is beautiful. You live **there**.

	Object of Modifying Clause	
The city	you live there 	is beautiful.
	where	
The city	where you live	is beautiful.

Identifying Clause vs. Nonidentifying Clauses with Where and When

IDENTIFYING CLAUSE



A clause that identifies the noun before it (tells you *which one*) is not set off with commas. The object pronoun **when** or **where** may be omitted. However, some verbs may require a preposition to be included. Note: "Where" and "When" can sometimes be replaced with "In which."

The area **where the "flower children" lived** was a neighborhood in San Francisco.

The area **in which the "flower children" lived** was a neighborhood in San Francisco.

The area **the "flower children" lived in** was a neighborhood in San Francisco. (The verb **live** requires adding/keeping the preposition **in**.)

The years **when the "flower children" thrived** were a colorful decade.

The years **in which the "flower children" thrived** were a colorful decade.

The years **the "flower children" thrived** were a colorful decade.

NONIDENTIFYING CLAUSE



A clause that adds extra, nonidentifying information is set off with comma(s). The object pronoun **when** or **where** is required (cannot be omitted) in a nonidentifying clause.

The Haight, **where the "flower children" lived**, was a neighborhood in San Francisco.

The Haight, **in which the "flower children" lived**, was a neighborhood in San Francisco.

The 1960s, **when the "flower children" thrived**, was a colorful decade.

The 1960s, **in which the "flower children" thrived**, was a colorful decade.

This page titled [7.6: Adjective Clauses with When and Where](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

7.7: Practice with When and Where Adjective Clauses

Exercise 7.12: The Right Time or Place: Change *When* or *Where* to a *Which*-Clause

Select the response from the list that best completes the sentence.

1. Monday is **the day when** we begin the work week.

Monday is **the day** (in which / on which / at which) we begin the work week.

2. Midnight is **the time when** the date changes.

Midnight is **the time** (in which / on which / at which) the date changes.

3. Three-fifty Main Street is **the address where** you can write me.

Three-fifty Main Street is **the address** (in which / on which / at which) you can write me.

4. **The lake where** we swam was clean and clear.

The lake (in which / on which / at which) we swam was clean and clear.

5. Seven o'clock is **the time when** I get up.

Seven o'clock is **the time** (in which / on which / at which) I get up.

6. California is **the state where** I live.

California is **the state** (in which / on which / at which) I live .

7. Parking lot D is **the place where** I parked my car.

Parking lot D is **the location** (in which / on which / at which) I parked my car.

8. Summer is **the time when** people enjoy warmer weather.

Summer is **the season** (in which / on which / at which) people enjoy warmer weather.

9. The backyard is **the place where** we can relax outside.

The backyard is **the area** (in which / on which / at which) we can relax outside.

Exercise 7.13: Correct or Incorrect

The Ferry Building

A: Read the Context

Every day hundreds of people pass through the San Francisco Ferry Building, a place where a variety of products and services are available. The San Francisco Ferry Building is also the place where commuters catch their ferries at. In addition, it is a place where people come to walk and watch activity on the bay. The area inside in which people shop for food is also where people can find restaurants and shops. Shops where you can buy meat, cheese, bread, mushrooms, plants, coffee, herbs, and so on.

The Ferry Building was built at a time there were no bridges in 1875. People had to take a train to the Berkeley or Oakland ferry terminals, there they would catch a ferry to San Francisco. When the Bay Bridge opened in 1936, the Ferry Building became an unnecessary place at which the ferries were forgotten. In the 1970s, when the traffic on the bridge made the commute difficult, ferry boat service resumed. Now the Ferry Building serves as an activity center where San Franciscans shop, eat, catch transportation, and relax near the water.

available (Adj) – easy to find or get

commuter (N) – a person traveling to and from a place of work

ferry (N) – a commercial service with terminals and boats for transporting persons, automobiles across small bodies of water.

resume (V) – restart

terminal (N) – station

B. Correct or Incorrect

Decide whether the sentence is "correct" or "incorrect". Select your response—correct / incorrect. For incorrect answers, write the correction in the blank.

1. Every day hundreds of people pass through the San Francisco Ferry Building, a place where a variety of products and services are available.

Correct Incorrect Correction_____

2. The San Francisco Ferry Building is also the place where commuters catch their ferries at.

Correct Incorrect Correction_____

3. In addition, it is a place where people come to walk and watch activity on the bay.

Correct Incorrect Correction_____

4. The area inside in which people shop for food is also where people can find restaurants and shops.

Correct Incorrect Correction_____

5. Shops where you can buy meat, cheese, bread, mushrooms, plants, coffee, herbs, and so on.

Correct Incorrect Correction_____

6. The Ferry Building was built at a time there were no bridges in 1875.

Correct Incorrect Correction_____

7. People had to take a train to the Berkeley or Oakland ferry terminals, there they would catch a ferry to San Francisco.

Correct Incorrect Correction_____

8. When the Bay Bridge opened in 1936, the Ferry Building became an unnecessary place at which the ferries were forgotten.

Correct Incorrect Correction_____

9. In the 1970s, when the traffic on the bridge made the commute difficult, ferry boat service resumed.

Correct Incorrect Correction_____

10. Now the Ferry Building serves as a center of activity where San Franciscans shop, eat, catch transportation, and relax near the water.

Correct Incorrect Correction_____

Page from [Grammar Quizzes](#) by [Julie Sevastopoulos](#) licensed for use under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#).

This page titled [7.7: Practice with When and Where Adjective Clauses](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

8: Noun Clauses

[8.1: Introduction to Noun Clauses](#)

[8.2: 7.2-Practice with "That" Noun Clauses](#)

[8.3: Embedded Questions-Wh-Clauses](#)

[8.4: Reported Yes/No Questions with If and Whether](#)

[8.4.1: Practice with Reported Yes/No Questions](#)

[8.5: Direct and Indirect Speech](#)

This page titled [8: Noun Clauses](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

8.1: Introduction to Noun Clauses

Noun clauses are clauses that function as nouns. Noun clauses are very helpful to academic writing for many reasons. First, they are an important part of reported speech. For example, when you write *A computer scientist at Google says that . . .*, you will use a noun clause to complete the sentence. Noun clauses are also important for expressing abstract ideas. An example of this is: *How this technology works is important to understand*. In this case, we are not talking about the physical form of the technology or even the work that it does; instead, we are talking about the way it works. As you can see, noun clauses are essential for academic writing!

A CLOSER LOOK

A noun clause is a dependent clause that works like a noun. It can serve as a subject or an object. For example:

- ***What the doctor said*** was very important. (subject)
- The weather website says ***that it might snow tomorrow***. (object)

A noun clause frequently follows certain adjectives, nouns, and verbs. For example:

- The author of the report says ***that the majority of students prefer to continue to study remotely on Zoom***.
- Many people hold the belief ***that marijuana should be legal everywhere***.
- She insisted ***that her cousin had lied about the money***.

Relative Pronouns

A noun clause begins with a relative pronoun. Here are some of the most common ones: *who, whom, which, how, what, when, whether, where, why, if, that*

The relative pronoun is usually followed by the subject and verb of the clause. However, sometimes the words *who, what, and which* are both the relative pronoun and the subject of the clause. When a *that* clause is the subject of the sentence, the word *that* is necessary. In all other cases, the word *that* is optional when it begins a noun clause. Formal academic writing usually uses *that*, whereas informal speaking often omits it. For example:

- *Most people know that eating a balanced diet is important for our health.*
Eating functions as a subject in this sentence, so the relative pronoun "that" can be omitted:
- *Most people know eating a balanced diet is important for our health.*

Functions of a Noun Clause in a Sentence

As a noun, a noun clause can be the subject, object of the verb, or object of a preposition. It can also be a complement.

Subject

Here is an example where a noun clause is the subject of the sentence (a second noun clause forms a subject complement, which is described later):

- ***What this research revealed*** was that the COVID vaccine helped to prevent many deaths.

In the sentence above, the noun clause is the subject of the sentence. The whole idea of *what this research revealed* is the subject of the verb *was*.

The structure is [relative pronoun] + [subject of the clause] + [verb of the clause].

Object of the verb

The noun clause can also act as an object of the verb. For example:

- *So hopefully you can see now **that pets help to prevent depression in many people** ...*

The structure is [relative pronoun] + [subject of the clause] + [verb of the clause]. In the sentence above, the noun clause is the object of the verb *see*.

Object of a preposition

The noun clause can also act as an object of a preposition. For example:

- *The race car driver wrote a short novel about **how he won four national competitions**.*

In the sentence above, the noun clause is the object of the preposition *about*.

The structure is [preposition] + [relative pronoun] + [subject of the clause] + [verb of the clause].

Complement

We sometimes use a noun clause after a be verb as a complement to identify or complete the meaning of the subject. For example:

- *What this research revealed was **that the COVID vaccine helped to prevent many deaths**.*

We sometimes use a noun clause after a linking verb + adjective to express an attitude or degree of certainty about something. In the sentence above, the second noun clause (*that the COVID vaccine helped to prevent many deaths*) acts as a subject complement. It follows a be verb and identifies or explains what the research revealed. This is called a subject complement. For example:

- *I am not surprised **that you need a good night's sleep to do well on the test**.*

In the sentence above, the linking verb is followed by an adjective and then the noun clause. This is called an adjective complement.

How do you form a noun clause?

There are three ways to form noun clauses:

- Begin with *that*, *who*, or *which*
- Begin with *if* or *whether*
- Begin with a question word such as *who*, *what*, *where*, *when*, *how*

Noun Clauses Part 1: That Clauses

That clauses can come at the beginning of the sentence and act as the subject. In this case, the word *that* cannot be omitted. For example:

- ***That a hurricane is coming* is concerning to people on the coast.**

Note: Using *that* clauses as subjects is considered very formal. It is more common to use "The fact that" or "It is"

- ***The fact that a hurricane is coming* is of great concern to people on the coast.**
- ***It is of great concern to people on the coast that a hurricane is coming.***

That clauses can come after certain nouns such as idea, thought, belief, opinion, claim, or statement. For example:

- ***It is our opinion that the COVID pandemic is not likely to be the last.***

That clauses can come after the verb of the independent clause. In this case, the dependent clause is embedded in the independent clause and functions as the object. For example:

- ***I insist that you come to the party.***

That clauses can come after certain adjectives such as happy, sad, worried, certain, sure, surprised. For example:

- ***I am certain that the exam is on Tuesday.***

That clauses can be used to report what someone else said. For example:

- ***She said that she was retiring and moving to Sweden.***
- ***The teacher told us that noun clauses are common in academic writing.***

NOTE: Except for the first use described above, *that* can be omitted from the noun clause.

Watch this short video to learn more about noun clauses: 

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://pb.libretexts.org/synthesis/?p=164>

If you want more instruction and examples about noun clauses, try these links:

- [SmrtEnglish Video: Noun Clauses \(full class with Shaun\)](#)
- [EnglishSentences.com: Noun Clauses](#)

Video from: Benn, Adam. "Advanced English Grammar: Noun Clauses." YouTube, 12 July 2016, www.youtube.com/watch?v=9SrEEPt4MQA. Accessed 29 Sept. 2020.

This page titled [8.1: Introduction to Noun Clauses](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.2: 7.2-Practice with "That" Noun Clauses

Exercise 8.1: Noun Clauses with "It" as Subjects-Giving Opinions

Use the words in parentheses to write a new sentence with *it* and a *that* clause.

Example: Houston is a very large city. (clear) *It is clear that Houston is a very large city.*

1. Space Center Houston is a popular attraction in Houston. (well-known)
2. Houston is the most diverse city in the United States. (interesting)
3. Houston is sometimes called "Space City." (appropriate)
4. Traffic can be very heavy in Houston during rush hour. (annoying)
5. Houston has a vibrant performing arts community and world class art museums. (wonderful)
6. The cost of living in Houston is lower than in any other large city in the United States. (surprising)

Exercise 8.2: Noun Clauses as Subject Complements

A. Read the first sentence in each pair below. Then complete the new sentence using a *that* clause from the box with similar meaning.

that more people will struggle to pay for food and other necessities.	that temperatures are rising around the world.
that natural disasters are increasing in number and intensity.	that people in many job sectors can complete their work in less time.
that people are losing jobs as AI does the work with greater efficiency.	that there is not enough rain.
that many things that they need or want cost more money.	that farmers lose income and can eventually lose their farms.

1. a. One problem in some areas is drought
One problem in some areas is _____
b. One result is loss of crops.
One result is _____
2. a. One advantage of artificial intelligence is greater efficiency.
One advantage of artificial intelligence is _____
b. One disadvantage of artificial intelligence is job loss.
One disadvantage of artificial intelligence is _____
3. a. A major world issue is global warming.
A major world issue is _____
b. One detrimental result is an increase in storms and other natural disasters.
One detrimental result is _____
4. a. A big concern for consumers today is inflation.

A big concern for consumers today is _____

b. One result of the rise in prices is increasing poverty.

One result of the rise in prices is _____

B: Expansion Activity: Choose a current issue that concerns you and write two sentences about that issue. Use noun clauses.

Example: One problem that I am concerned about is pollution. A negative effect of pollution is that people can get allergies from breathing polluted air.

Exercise 8.3: Noun Clauses as Adjective Complements

Write sentences about your life and future using the adjectives in parentheses.

Example: (disappointed) I am disappointed that I can't go on vacation next week.

1. (confident) _____

2. (proud) _____

3. (worried) _____

4. (excited) _____

5. (happy) _____

Exercise 8.4: Noun Clauses as Objects

A. Read the statement and the subject and verb that follows it. Then combine them into one sentence. You may use or not use the word *that* in your answer.

Example:

It rains a lot in Houston. I know - I know that it rains a lot in Houston. I know it rains a lot in Houston.

1. Houston is the capital of Texas. I don't think -

2. Austin is the capital of Texas. I know –

3. About seven million people live in the Houston metropolitan area. I have heard –

4. Houston is named after Sam Houston, a founder of Texas. My teacher told me –

5. Houston used to have a major football team. I believe –

6. The team was called the Oilers. My friend said –

7. The team left town a number of years ago. I understand –

8. Houston has on average 200 growing days for gardens. My teacher informed us –

B. Expansion Activity: Find out some interesting information about the city or state where you live. Write four sentences about things that you learned. Use noun clauses beginning in a variety of ways such as:

I learned that.../ I discovered that.../ I was surprised to learn that/ I didn't know that.../ I found out that...

Example: I learned that Texas is the biggest state in the United States.

Exercise 8.5: Noun Clauses as Objects

Answer the following questions using an embedded statement with the verb provided. Be careful! Some statements require the object supplied in parentheses. You will need to supply the subject.

Examples:

Which is bigger, an elephant or a mouse? Know - I know that an elephant is bigger than a mouse.

Who was the president of the United States in 2010, Barack Obama or George Bush? Believe - I believe that Barack Obama was the president of the United States in 2010.

Will we have school on Fridays? Notify –Our teacher notified us that we will not have school on Fridays.

1. Is New York City bigger than Houston? Think –
2. Is Houston bigger than Austin? Believe–
3. Does the college offer bachelor's degrees? Inform (us)– The college...
4. Is Houston a major shipping port in America? Understand –
5. Is it going to rain tomorrow? Tell (me)–A weather forecaster.....
6. Are noun clauses used in formal writing? Teach (me)-My teacher.....
7. Will you have homework this weekend? Assume –
8. Does everyone in America speak English? Realize –

Optional: If you want more instruction and examples about noun clauses, try these video links:

[SmrtEnglish Video: Noun Clauses \(full class with Shaun\)](#)

Video from: Benn, Adam. "Advanced English Grammar: Noun Clauses." YouTube, 12 July 2016, www.youtube.com/watch?v=9SrEEPt4MQA. Accessed 29 Sept. 2020.

This page contains original content created by Allyson Marceau.

This page titled [8.2: 7.2-Practice with "That" Noun Clauses](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

8.3: Embedded Questions-Wh-Clauses

Noun Clauses Part 2: *Wh*- Clauses

Wh- clauses are noun clauses that begin with question words. Although these clauses begin with question words, they are not questions, so they follow the regular subject-verb order. There are two patterns. Examples of questions are given as a point of comparison with examples of noun clauses.

1. *Who* and *what* may act as the subject of the noun clause:

Question: Who is coming to the party?

Noun Clause: *I don't know **who is coming to the party**.*

Question: What happened?

Noun Clause: *He saw **what happened**.*

2. *Who*, *what*, *when*, *why*, *where*, *how*, *how much*, *how long* begin the clause and are followed by a subject:

Question: Where did she go?

Noun Clause: *I wonder **where she went**.*

Question: What did you say?

Noun Clause: *I didn't hear **what you said**.*

Embedded questions are noun clauses, which are dependent clauses. Embedded questions use statement word order as opposed to question word order. They can function as the subject, direct or indirect object, or an adjective complement.

Question: Where is my shoe?

Subject: **Where my shoe is** will eventually be determined.

Object: I don't know **where my shoe is**.

Object of a preposition: I would like you to focus on **where my shoe is**.

Adjective complement: It is unclear **where my shoe is**.

Patterns and Examples

Question: **Question word + auxiliary + subject + verb?** What does she study?

Embedded Question-[Subject]: **[Question word + subject + verb] + verb**: What she studies is difficult.

Embedded Question-[Object]: **Subject + verb + [question word + subject + verb]**: I wonder what she studies.

Embedded Question-[Adjective Complement]: **It + be verb + adjective + [question word + subject + verb]**: It was obvious what she studies.

Note on Dependent Clauses

There are three types of dependent clauses: noun, adjective, and adverb. All three types might use the same word as a relative pronoun or subordinating conjunction.

Noun Clause: *When they will arrive* is unknown.

Adjective Clause: The day *when they arrived* was hectic.

Adverb Clause: *When they arrive*, we will begin.

Notice how all of the dependent clauses begin with “when”. Another common word used by noun and adjective clauses is “that”. Being able to distinguish the difference between adjective and noun clauses can be useful for reading comprehension. Also, understanding the differences between the dependent clauses will help you in word order and punctuation when writing.

Exercise 8.6-Sentence Completion

Complete the sentences with the appropriate form of an embedded question.

1. I can't remember _____.
 - a. which book did he want you to buy
 - b. which book he wanted you to buy
 - c. which book is he want you to buy
2. They didn't tell me _____.
 - a. why aren't your friends at home studying
 - b. why didn't your friends at home studying
 - c. why your friends aren't at home studying
3. Did he tell you _____?
 - a. what did he find
 - b. what he found
 - c. what he finds
4. I know _____.
 - a. how many states are there
 - b. how many states there are
 - c. how many are there states
5. Guess _____!
 - a. what did I buy
 - b. what I buy
 - c. what I bought
6. It's none of your business _____.
 - a. how old am I
 - b. how old I am

7. Can you tell me _____?
- a. where is the nearest restroom
 - b. where the nearest restroom is
8. The children are excited about _____.
- a. where they will go trick-or-treating
 - b. where will they go trick-or-treating
 - c. where do they go trick-or-treating
9. My friend will be mad at his brother for _____.
- a. what did he say to their mother
 - b. what he says to their mother
 - c. what he said to their mother
11. _____ depends on your preparation.
- a. How long it will take
 - b. How long will it take
12. I don't care _____.
- a. which topic he chooses
 - b. which topic does he choose
 - c. which topic does he chooses
13. _____ changes every year.
- a. When do Muslims celebrate Eid
 - b. When Muslims celebrate Eid
14. Do you know _____?
- a. what we will have for dinner
 - b. what will we have for dinner

Exercise 8.7: Answer the following questions with the words given.

Examples:

Who is your teacher? I don't remember –
I don't remember who my teacher is.

Whose car was he driving? Do you remember –
Do you remember whose car he was driving?

- 1. What did he find? Did he tell you –
- 2. Why weren't your friends at home studying? They didn't tell me –
- 3. Who ate my cookie? I don't know –
- 4. How many students are there in your English class? I think –
- 5. What did your brother cook for his girlfriend? Do you know –
- 6. How much did his new car cost? He didn't say –

7. Where can I buy some good shoes? Can you suggest –
8. What did your friend want? I am not sure –
9. Where is the closest gas station? I wonder -
10. Who will Joe marry? I don't know –

Exercise 8.8-Objects of Prepositions

Use the questions to create statements with embedded questions as object of prepositions. Use the example to guide you.

Example: Question-What languages does she speak at home?

Answer-I am interested in what languages she speaks at home.

1. Question: Where are we going to go on vacation this year?

Answer: We are thinking about

2. Question: Who is your teacher?

Answer: I was surprised about

3. Question: Whose car was he driving?

Answer: I am unaware of

4. Question: Why are they smiling?

Answer: I am interested in

5. Question: When is the next presidential election?

Answer: I am curious about

“Grammar Presentation-Embedded Questions” is derived from “[ESL for High-Intermediate Students: The Way You Like It](#)” by Don Bissonette licensed under [CC BY-NC](#)

Exercise 8.9-Editing Embedded Questions

Identify and correct eight (8) embedded question errors in the paragraph about age ceremonies across cultures.

All children around the world eventually become adolescents. However, when is their coming of age celebrated depends on their culture. In the Jewish faith, 12 to 13-year-old boys and girls participate in celebrations called Bar and Bat Mitzvahs. Jewish historians offer many theories on how did this celebration began, but it rose in importance during the 18th and 19th centuries. In the Christian faith, 14-year-old boys and girls participate in the ritual of confirmation. Confirmation is what does signals the adolescent is a full member of society. A girl's 15th birthday is when do many Latin American cultures celebrate a girl's passage to womanhood. However, various Latin American cultures differ in how do they celebrate the Quinceañera. Finally, some people in the United States and Canada celebrate adolescents at 16 years old (“sweet sixteen”). Why are adolescents celebrated at 16 in America is unknown, but some speculate that age 16 is when adolescents take on adult responsibilities such as driving and getting a job. Becoming an adult means having the freedom to choose what do you want to do with life. However, coming of age also means taking on new responsibilities. What do these ceremonies demonstrate is that becoming an adult is an entire community of friends, family, and neighbors.

“Editing Embedded Questions” is derived from “[Coming of Age Ceremonies Across Different Cultures](#)” by Thomas Pool licensed by [CommonLit](#) under [CC BY-NC-SA](#).

Communication Practice

Exercise 8.10-What Do You Know?

Complete the sentences with things that you do not know about the United States or Texas. Then change the statement to a question with a wh- noun clause and ask your partner for the answer.

Example: I don't know how to get to Austin. Question: Do you know how to get to Austin?

1. I don't know
2. I want to know
3. I need to find out
4. I wonder
5. Can you tell me

Exercise 8.11-I'm Not Sure...

Find a classmate who is from a different country than you are. Ask your classmate questions your country that they may not know the answer to. Respond to your classmates' questions using embedded questions. Use the example to guide you. (If you don't have different countries, research some interesting facts about the city, state, or country that you are in now, and ask your partner.)

Examples:

1. Do you know what the capital of <my country> is?

Answer: I'm not sure what the capital of <your country> is.

2. Do you know who the leader of my country is?

Answer: I'm not sure who the leader of your country is. / Yes, I know who the leader of your country is. He/She is _____

Questions to ask your partner/group members:

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.
- 5.

Page from [High Intermediate Academic Grammar](#) for ESL Students Licensed under [Creative Commons Attribution](#) edited for content and relevance.

For more information on this topic, watch these videos: [Noun Clauses with Wh-Words](#) and [Noun Clauses with if or whether](#)

This page titled [8.3: Embedded Questions-Wh-Clauses](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

8.4: Reported Yes/No Questions with If and Whether

Noun Clauses Part 3: Noun Clauses with *If* and *Whether* --Reported Yes/No-Questions

Restating a Question within a Clause



Quoted vs. Restated Questions

QUOTED QUESTION	
A quoted yes-no question begins with a <i>main clause</i> that includes the speaker and the verb <i>say</i> or <i>ask</i> , followed by a comma and the exact words of the quote, enclosed in quotation marks. The quoted speech may also be placed before the main clause: " <i>Are you OK?</i> ," <i>my friend asked</i> . Related page Quotation Marks .	
MAIN CLAUSE	YES-NO QUESTION
My sister asked,	"Are you coming with us?"
My sister's friend asked,	"Is your brother coming too?"
My friends asked,	"Can you drive us?"
Joe asked,	"Will you have enough gas?"
My friend asked,	"Do we have enough money for gas?"

REPORTED QUESTION	
A reported yes-no question also begins with the main clause, but is followed by the content of the quote as it relates to the speaker in time, person, place, and direction, at the moment of speaking. A subordinator (marker) <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> subordinates the reported speech to the main clause.	
MAIN CLAUSE	REPORTED SPEECH
My sister asked	if I was coming with them.
My sister's friend asked	if my brother was coming too.
My friends asked	whether I could drive them.
Joe asked	if I would have enough gas.
My friend wanted to know	whether or not we had enough money for gas.

A **yes-no question** differs from a **Wh-question**. In a yes-no question, the quoted question begins with an auxiliary verb form such as *is*, *are*, *am*, *do*, *does*, *has*, *have*, *can*, *will*, *must*. The expected answer is either *yes* or *no* (+ or -).

In reported speech, no additional punctuation (quotation marks, comma, or question mark) is used.

Related page [If vs. Whether](#)

Subordinate Question-Clause

QUOTED WH-QUESTION

A question with a modal or auxiliary verb can be placed within a comment stating opinion. **If** or **whether** links the subordinate clause to the main clause.

"Did he go?"

"Have you been here before?"

"Should we turn here?"

"Is it time to go?"

"Can you meet me tonight?"

"Is she his girlfriend?"

"Will you be late?"

COMMENT WITH YES/NO QUESTION

The opinion or comment is placed first followed by the subordinated question clause, which is adjusted to the perspective of the main clause.

I don't know **if/whether he went**. (go → went)

I can't remember **if/ whether I have been here before**. (there → here.)

I have no idea **if/whether we should turn here or not**.

Can you tell me **if/whether it is time to go?**

He couldn't tell me **if/whether he could meet tonight**.

Do you happen to know **if/whether she is his girlfriend?**

She couldn't answer **if/whether she would be late**.

Related page [That/What Clauses | Adjusting perspective](#) Also see [Yes/No Question Clauses](#) (whether)

Subordinate Connectors – If vs. Whether

Understanding Differences in Usage

IF

In the following situations, speakers prefer to use **if**.

REPORTED SPEECH

I asked them if they were leaving.

LESS FORMAL CONTEXTS

I asked him if he is going to visit. (informal context)

I asked him whether he would visit. (more formal)

WHETHER

In the following situations, speakers prefer using **whether**.

WORDS USED IN FORMAL CONTEXTS

We **inquired whether** the president would attend the summit meeting. (investigate, explain, examine, study, decide, determine)

AFTER A PREPOSITION

They **asked about** whether the President would attend the meeting. (look into)

Common Mistakes

Errors and Solutions

ERROR

*Can you tell me **is it** a boy or a girl?

*She asked me **when** we are coming **or not**.

They asked **if** we wanted to have dinner with them sometime. (Using **if** implies possibly never)

Page derived from [Grammar Quizzes](#) by [Julie Sevastopoulos](#) is licensed for use under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#).

This page titled [8.4: Reported Yes/No Questions with If and Whether](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

8.4.1: Practice with Reported Yes/No Questions

Exercise 8.12: Change the quoted question to a reported question.

Select the response from the list that best completes the sentence.

1. "Is this the bus to Austin?"

He is asking me (is this the bus to Austin? / if is this the bus to Austin. / if this is the bus to Austin.)

2. "Do we have to buy a ticket before boarding?"

They asked me (do they have to buy to a ticket / if do they have to buy to a ticket / if they have to buy a ticket) before boarding.

3. "Can you buy a ticket on the bus?"

Do you know (whether you could buy a ticket / whether can you buy a ticket / whether you can buy a ticket) on the bus?

4. "Does this train go to the airport?"

I'm not sure (if this train goes to the airport. / if this train does go to the airport./ if this train went to the airport.)

5. "Is this a 'bullet train'?"

I really don't know (whether is this a bullet train. / whether this was a bullet train. / whether this is a bullet train.)

6. "Does this train arrive in Paris before noon?"

Could you tell me (if this train arrives / if this train does arrive) in Paris before noon?

7. "Is there a special fare for students?"

Do you happen to know (whether is there a special fare / whether a special fare is / whether there is a special fare) for students?

8. "Could I sit with you?"

She asked me (if she could sit with you. / if she could sit with me. / if could she sit with me.)

9. "Are you a regular commuter?"

May I ask (whether you are a regular commuter? / whether you a regular commuter? / whether are you a regular commuter?)

10. "Are you American?"

The guy next to me asked (if am I American. / if am I American. / if I was American.)

Exercise 8.13: Correct or Incorrect-Editing

Doctor, Doctor!



A: Read the conversation .

Doctor: Does your neck hurt?

Patient: No, my head hurts.

Doctor: Does it hurt more in front or in back?

Patient: It hurts in front, around my eyes.

Doctor: Do you have any allergies?

Patient: I have hay fever.

Doctor: Is your nose running?

Patient: No, but I have a sore throat.

Doctor: Did you get a flu shot this year?

Patient: No, I don't usually get the flu.

Doctor: Well, it looks like you've got it now. Why don't you go home and rest, drink plenty of fluids and stay away from others for a couple of days.

Patient: OK. Thank you.

hay fever (expression) — being allergic to the pollen of common plants and grasses

fluids (N) — water, liquids

runny nose – a condition where fluids drip from the nose

B. Select a response **correct** or **incorrect**. If the sentence is incorrect, write a correction.

1. Tell me if your neck hurts.

Correct Incorrect---Correction:

2. Can you tell me whether does it hurt more in front or in back of your head?

Correct Incorrect--Correction:

3. Let me ask you whether have you any allergies ?

Correct Incorrect---Correction:

4. Tell me if your nose is running.

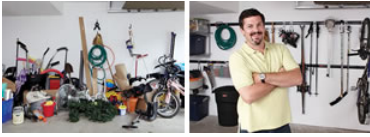
Correct Incorrect---Correction:

5. Can you tell me whether did you get a flu shot this year?

Correct Incorrect---Correction:

Exercise 8.14

Rent a Wife or Husband



A. Read

INTERVIEWER: Jane, you started your company one year ago. Is it doing well now?

JANE OLSON: Oh yes! It's really taken off. We were surprised to find out how many working couples were desperate for help with household chores.

INTERVIEWER: You named your business "Rent a Wife or Husband". Are the services you offer different from a house cleaner or handyman?

JANE OLSON: Yes, we hire people who are capable of doing a wide range of chores around the house.

INTERVIEWER: What kind of services do you offer? For example, do you offer childcare, dog walking, food shopping, or tutoring?

JANE OLSON: Yes, we do exactly these kinds of chores.

INTERVIEWER: Are your employees licensed?

JANE OLSON: Licensed? They all have driver's licenses. A couple have contractor licenses. Another has a design license. Another has extensive computer skills. Our employees offer a variety of skills from different professional backgrounds and fields.

INTERVIEWER: Are your employees mostly young people?

JANE OLSON: A large number of our employees are retired. They are people who enjoy using their skills, interacting with young families, and bringing home some extra money.

INTERVIEWER: Let's say, for example, I wanted to have a party here, could your people host it?

JANE OLSON: Well yes, we could, but you would still be the host. Our people can do the food shopping, decorating, cooking, and serving of the food.

INTERVIEWER: What about healthcare? Can your service send a stand-in mom for a sick child.

JANE OLSON: No. That is something we cannot do. If a child has a cold we can help, but a child with a fever or an elderly parent with healthcare problems requires a healthcare professional.

INTERVIEWER: Are there any requests that surprise you?

JANE OLSON: Yes. Some people want us to decorate their Christmas trees and hang house lights. Though it is traditionally done by the family, we can send a couple of *elves* to decorate for the holidays.

INTERVIEWER: So in a way, are you offering the kinds of things that a grandmother or grandfather used to do for younger family members.

JANE OLSON: Yes. We are the absent aunts, uncles, grandmothers and grandfathers.

INTERVIEWER: Are you planning on expanding your business to other cities next year.

JANE OLSON: Not right now. Currently, we are expanding our resources here by reaching out to the retired community and to the young working couples in need.

chore (N) — work; task; daily jobs usually around home

contractor (N) — home-builder

desperate (Adj) — very much in need

elf / elves (N) — helpers to Santa Claus

extensive (Adj)-- wide, reaching over a wide area (a lot)

stand-in (N) – temporary, substitute

take off (V) — fly, rise, succeed

wide range (expression) — a variety

B. Error Correction- Reported Yes/No Questions

Edit the incorrect sentence(s) in the space below each question. If the sentence is correct, write "correct."

1.The interviewer asked Jane is her business doing well now.

Edit 1:

2.He wanted to know if the services you are offering were different from a house cleaner or handyman.

Edit 2:

3.He inquired if they offer childcare, dog walking, food shopping, or tutoring.

Edit 3:

4. He questioned whether are her employees licensed?

Edit 4:

5. The interviewer asked about if her employees are mostly young people?

Edit 5:

6. The interviewer wondered her staff could host a party here.

Edit 6:

7. He questioned if they can to provide healthcare for sick children or elders.

Edit 7:

8. The interviewer asked are there any requests that surprise you?

Edit 8:

9. He asked her if her employees are doing the kinds of things that grandparents used to do for younger family members.

Edit 9:

10. He asked if was Jane planning on expanding your business to other cities next year.

Edit 10:

Page from [Grammar Quizzes](#) by [Julie Sevastopoulos](#) is licensed for use under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#).

This page titled [8.4.1: Practice with Reported Yes/No Questions](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

8.5: Direct and Indirect Speech

Introduction

- Direct speech is repeating the exact words that someone spoke or wrote. When using direct speech, a writer must use quotation marks to show that he/she is quoting exactly what another person said.
- We can also report someone's words using a *that* clause. We call this reported speech (or indirect speech).
- When using reported speech, it is common practice to use backshifting. Backshifting is moving the tense back in time in order to show that the reporting occurs after the original statement was made. In addition, when using reported speech, the subject and object pronouns, possessive adjectives, times, and locations often change from those used in direct speech.

For more information on this topic, watch this video: [Reported Speech \(Noun Clauses in Indirect Speech\)](#)

Backshifting in Reported Speech

This chart shows the verbs used when backshifting from various verb tenses and verb forms.

Direct Speech	Reported Speech	Backshifting Change
The student said, "I study hard."	He said (that) he studied hard.	simple present to simple past
The student **says , "I study hard."	He says (that) he studies hard.	no verb tense change
He said, "I am studying hard."	He said (that) he was studying hard.	present progressive to past progressive
He said, "I was studying hard."	past progressive	past progressive to past perfect progressive
He said, "I will study hard."	He said (that) he would study hard.	simple future will to would
He said, "I am going to study hard."	He said (that) he was going to study hard.	future "be going to" to "was/were going to"
He said, "I am going to study hard."	He says (that) he is going to study hard.	no verb tense change
He said, "I have studied hard."	He said (that) he had studied hard.	present perfect to past perfect
He said, "I studied hard."	He said (that) he had studied hard.	simple past to past perfect
He said, "I had studied hard."	He said (that) he had studied hard.	no verb tense change
He told them, " Do your homework."	He told them to do their homework.	imperative to infinitive
He asked, " Do you want a job?"	He asked if I wanted a job.	yes or no question to if or whether or not (for alternatives)

Direct Speech	Reported Speech	Backshifting Change
He said, "I can study hard."	He said (that) he could study hard.	can to could
He **says , "I can study hard."	He says (that) he can study hard.	no verb tense change
He said, "I may/might study hard."	He said (that) he might study hard.	may or might to might
He said, "I must study hard."	He said (that) he had to study hard.	must to had to
He said, "I could study hard."	He said (that) he could study hard.	no verb tense change
He said, "I should study hard."	He said (that) he should study hard.	no verb tense change

Note: The word "that" is optional in the reported speech sentences. In fact, native speakers usually do not say the "that." Common verbs used for reporting words are as follows: say, tell, ask, inquire, respond, answer, reply, state, comment, report, complain, announce, explain, remark, note. In reported speech, these verbs are almost always used in the past tense.

******When the reporting verb (for example, say) is in the simple present, present perfect, or simple future, the reported speech does not change tense from the direct speech. When the reporting verb is in a tense that expresses a current truth, this usually indicates immediate reporting, so the indirect speech is in the simple present.

Deciding Not to Backshift

Sometimes we decide not to backshift the verb in the noun clause. We may choose to do this because:

- The state or event is still true

Example:

Direct Speech: Sheila asked, "When does the semester begin?"

Reported Speech: Sheila said that the semester begins on January 20th.

- We report something that someone just said

Example:

Direct Speech: My husband asked, "Where are the children?"

Reported Speech: My husband wanted to know where the children are.

Exercise 8.15-Verb Changes in Reported Speech with Backshifting

Select the appropriate verb tense for the reported speech when backshifting is used.

1. The woman said to her friend, "A plane just flew by at a very low altitude."

Reported speech: The woman told her friend that a plane _____ by at a very low altitude.

- just flew
- has just flown
- had just flown

2. My sister asked, “Will your son be home in August”?

Reported speech: My sister asked if my son _____ be home in August.

- a. will
- b. would
- c. is going to be

3. I said to my neighbor, “I love to work in my garden.”

Reported speech: I said to my neighbor that I _____ to work in my garden.

- a. love
- b. loved
- c. am loving

4. The woman said to her friend, “We were working in the garden when you called.”

Reported speech: The woman told her husband that they _____ in the garden when she called.

- a. have been working
- b. worked
- c. had been working

5. “You kids can watch TV now,” said the tired mother.

Reported speech: The tired mother said that the kids _____ TV.

- a. can watch
- b. could watch
- c. might watch

6. The man said, “The boys are playing soccer.”

Reported speech: The man said that the boys _____ soccer.

- a. are playing
- b. were playing
- c. played

7. “The teacher said, “You must get permission from your parents to go on the field trip.”

Reported speech: The teacher told the students that they _____ get permission from their parents to go on the field trip

- a. should
- b. had to
- c. might

8. The teacher told the students, “Bring your books to class tomorrow.”

Reported speech: The teacher told the students _____ their books to class the next day.

- a. to bring
- b. bring
- c. bringing

Think About It: Which of the questions in Exercise 8.15 can be written without backshifting? What verb form would you use?

Other Changes from Direct to Reported Speech

Other things that may change when going from quoted to reported speech. These include pronouns, times and places.

Direct Speech	Reported Speech
I	he/she
you	I/we/she/he/they (depends who the speaker is referring to)
my	his/her
our	their/our
your	my/our
here	there
now	then, that day
this/these	that/those
today	that day (<i>today</i> if it is still the same day.)
tomorrow	the next day, the following day (<i>tomorrow</i> if it is still the same day)
yesterday	the day before/ the previous day (<i>yesterday</i> if it is still the same day)

Exercise 8.16-Changing Pronouns, Times, and Places in Reported Speech

Select the best pronoun, time, or place to complete the reported speech.

1. The man told the restaurant manager, “Please make sure these plates are clean.”

Reported Speech: The man told the restaurant manager to make sure _____ plates were clean.

- a. these
- b. this
- c. those

2. My mom responded to me, “I’ll see you later on tonight.”

Reported Speech: My mom responded to me that _____ would see _____ later that night.

- a. I; you
- b. she; you
- c. she; me

3. I inquired of the mechanic, “How much will it cost to repair my car”?

Reported Speech: I inquired of the mechanic how much it would cost to repair _____ car.

- a. my
- b. your
- c. his

4. The teacher responded to his student’s question by saying, “I’m sorry, but I don’t know the answer.”

Reported Speech: The teacher responded to his student’s question by saying that _____ was sorry, but _____ didn’t know the answer.

- a. I
- b. she
- c. he

5. The worker told his boss, “I can’t come to work tomorrow because I have a doctor’s appointment.”

Reported Speech: The worker told her boss that she couldn’t come to work _____ because she had a doctor’s appointment.

- a. tomorrow
- b. the next day
- c. yesterday

6. Ahmed said, “I will pay the bill now.”

Reported Speech: Ahmed said that he would pay the bill _____.

- a. now
- b. yesterday
- c. then

7. Fatima asked, “Can I park here?”

Reported Speech: Fatima asked if she could park _____.

- a. here
- b. anywhere
- c. there

Speech Patterns

Direct Speech Pattern

Subject	Reporting Verb	Direct Statement
He	said,	"The cake is beautiful."
He	asked,	"Do you have a pencil I can borrow?"
He	ordered,	"Stop talking!".

Indirect Speech Patterns

Subject	Reporting Verb	Noun/ Pronoun	Relative Pronoun/ Conjunction	Indirect Speech
He	said	Ø	that	the cake was beautiful.
He	asked	(me)	if	I had a pencil he could borrow.
He	ordered	them	Ø	to stop talking.

Exercise 8.17-That or If

Complete the sentences with that or if.

1. The boys asked me, "Do you like classical music"?

Reported speech: The boys asked me _____ I liked classical music.

- a. that
- b. if

2. The teacher said, "You will not have an exam Friday."

Reported speech: The teacher said _____ we would not have an exam Friday.

- a. that
- b. if

3. When the woman saw the price on the coat, she remarked to her friend, "I think you are crazy if you buy that coat at that price."

Reported speech: When the woman saw the price on the coat, she remarked to her friend _____ she thought her friend was crazy if she bought that coat at that price.

- a. that
- b. if

4. My classmate asked me, "Will you study in the library after class?"

Reported speech: My classmate asked me _____ I would study in the library after class.

- a. that
- b. if

5. The mail carrier said, “I haven’t delivered any mail to that house in over a week.”

Reported speech: The mail carrier said _____ he hadn’t delivered any mail to that house in over a week.

- a. that
- b. if

6. The president commented to her staff, “This job is going to give me gray hair!”

Reported speech: The president commented to her staff _____ that job was going to give her gray hair!

- a. that
- b. if

Said versus Told

The reporting verbs *said* and *told* are similar. However, *told* is followed by a direct object, but *said* is not. Look at the examples.

- 1. Pedro said, “Turn off the lights.” (Pedro said to turn off the lights.)
- 2. Pedro told Danielle, “Turn off the lights.” (Pedro told Danielle to turn off the lights.)

Notice how the second example has “Danielle” after the reporting verb. This is a direct object and necessary. Said can have an indirect object added. This is another possibility although not common: “Pedro said to Danielle, ‘Turn off the lights.’”

For more information on this topic, watch this video: [Using ‘Say’ and ‘Tell’ with Noun Clauses](#)

Exercise 8.18-Said or Told

Complete the sentences with said or told.

- 1. The teacher _____ the students that noun clauses are difficult.
 - a. said
 - b. told
- 2. The students _____ that they needed a break.
 - a. said
 - b. told
- 3. The tutor _____ them that she could help at the Learning Center.
 - a. said
 - b. told
- 4. My son _____ his friend that he wanted to play superheroes.
 - a. said
 - b. told
- 5. Barbara _____ her daughter not to be late.
 - a. said
 - b. told

6. Her daughter _____ that she would be home before dark.

a. said

b. told

7. Billy _____ Piper to behave.

a. said

b. told

8. Piper didn't _____ anything because he is a dog.

a. say

b. tell

Exercise 8.19-Direct to Indirect Speech

Change the sentences from direct to indirect speech. Pay close attention to the verb tenses, pronouns, times, and places.

Example:

Direct Speech: I told my two sons, "I have traveled around the world two times."

Reported speech: I told my two sons that I had traveled around the world two times.

1. Direct speech: Jehona asked, "Can you write in Arabic?"

Indirect speech:

2. Direct speech: Kaori said, "This is the best ice cream!"

Indirect speech:

3. Direct speech: Gulmira said, "I may be late."

Indirect speech:

4. Direct speech: Hui said, "I haven't studied for the test yet."

Indirect speech:

5. Direct speech: Lina said, "Copy my notes from yesterday."

Indirect speech:

6. Direct speech: Dimitri asked me, "Can you help me understand English grammar?!"

Indirect speech:

"Grammar Presentation-Direct and Indirect (Reported) Speech" is derived from "[ESL Grammar: The Way You Like It](#)" Book 5 by Don Bissonnette licensed under [CC BY-NC](#) edited for length and errors.

This page titled [8.5: Direct and Indirect Speech](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

9: Gerunds and Infinitives

9.1: Introduction to-Gerunds and Infinitives- Reading

9.2: Gerunds Introduced

9.3: Gerunds Practice

9.3.1: Gerund as Subject

9.3.2: Gerunds - Questions

9.3.3: Verb + Gerund

9.3.4: Adjective+Preposition+Gerund

9.3.5: Gerunds - Find Someone Who - Questions

9.3.6: Gerunds in Go Expressions

9.3.7: Gerunds - Review

9.4: Gerund Rules - Review

9.5: Gerunds-Form and Usage

9.6: Infinitives-Form and Usage

9.6.1: Infinitives After Objects or Object Pronouns

9.6.2: Infinitives To Show Purpose

9.7: Infinitives Practice-"It is.."

9.7.1: Infinitives Review

9.7.2: Infinitives – Writing

9.7.3: Infinitives – More Questions

9.8: Practice-Gerunds and Infinitives

9.8.1: Gerunds + Infinitives Review

9.8.2: Gerunds + Infinitives Exercises

9.8.3: Gerunds and Infinitives - Speaking Practice

9.8.4: Wedding Interview and Writing

9.8.5: Error Correction

9.8.6: Writing Practices-Write a Letter

This page titled [9: Gerunds and Infinitives](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

9.1: Introduction to-Gerunds and Infinitives- Reading

Introduction to Gerunds and Infinitives

The following reading illustrates the form and uses of gerunds and infinitives.

Pre-Reading

Take a few minutes to write your thoughts on the following questions:

What is bilingualism?

What are the benefits of bilingualism?

What are some challenges of bilingualism?

Reading

Read and observe the form and uses of the bolded words and phrases

Why Bilinguals Are Smarter

<http://www.nytimes.com/2012/03/18/op...gewanted=print>

SPEAKING two languages rather than just one has obvious practical benefits in an increasingly globalized world. But in recent years, scientists **have begun to show** that the advantages of bilingualism are even more fundamental than being able to converse with a wider range of people. **Being bilingual**, it turns out, makes you smarter. It **can have** a profound effect on your brain, improving cognitive skills not related to language and even shielding against dementia in old age.

This view of bilingualism is remarkably different from the understanding of bilingualism through much of the 20th century. Researchers, educators and policy makers long considered a second language to be an interference, cognitively speaking, that hindered a child's academic and intellectual development.

They were not wrong about the interference: there is ample evidence that in a bilingual's brain both language systems are active even when he is using only one language, thus creating situations in which one system obstructs the other. But this interference, researchers are finding out, isn't so much a handicap as a blessing in disguise. It forces the brain **to resolve** internal conflict, giving the mind a workout that strengthens its cognitive muscles.

Bilinguals, for instance, seem **to be** more adept than monolinguals at **solving** certain kinds of mental puzzles. In a 2004 study by the psychologists Ellen Bialystok and Michelle Martin-Rhee, bilingual and monolingual preschoolers **were asked to sort** blue circles and red squares presented on a computer screen into two digital bins — one marked with a blue square and the other marked with a red circle.

In the first task, the children **had to sort** the shapes by color, placing blue circles in the bin marked with the blue square and red squares in the bin marked with the red circle. Both groups did this with comparable ease. Next, the children **were asked to sort** by shape, which was more challenging because it required placing the images in a bin marked with a conflicting color. The bilinguals were quicker at **performing** this task.

The collective evidence from a number of such studies suggests that the bilingual experience improves the brain's so-called executive function — a command system that directs the attention processes that we use for **planning**, **solving** problems and performing various other mentally demanding tasks. These processes include **ignoring** distractions **to stay focused**, switching attention willfully from one thing to another and holding information in mind — like remembering a sequence of directions while driving.

Why does the tussle between two simultaneously active language systems improve these aspects of cognition? Until recently, researchers thought the bilingual advantage stemmed primarily from an ability for *inhibition* that was honed by the exercise of **suppressing** one language system: this suppression, it was thought, would help train the bilingual mind **to ignore** distractions in other contexts. But that explanation increasingly appears **to be** inadequate, since studies **have shown** that bilinguals perform better than monolinguals even at tasks that do not require inhibition, like threading a line through an ascending series of numbers scattered randomly on a page.

The key difference between bilinguals and monolinguals may be more basic: a heightened ability to monitor the environment. "Bilinguals **have to switch** languages quite often — you may talk to your father in one language and to your mother in another

language,” says Albert Costa, a researcher at the University of Pompeu Fabra in Spain. “It requires keeping track of changes around you in the same way that we monitor our surroundings when driving.” In a study comparing German-Italian bilinguals with Italian monolinguals on monitoring tasks, Mr. Costa and his colleagues found that the bilingual subjects not only performed better, but they also did so with less activity in parts of the brain involved in monitoring, indicating that they were more efficient at it.

The bilingual experience appears **to influence** the brain from infancy to old age (and there is reason to believe that it may also apply to those who learn a second language later in life).

In a 2009 study led by Agnes Kovacs of the International School for Advanced Studies in Trieste, Italy, 7-month-old babies exposed to two languages from birth were compared with peers raised with one language. In an initial set of trials, the infants were presented with an audio cue and then shown a puppet on one side of a screen. Both infant groups learned **to look** at that side of the screen in anticipation of the puppet. But in a later set of trials, when the puppet **began appearing** on the opposite side of the screen, the babies exposed to a bilingual environment quickly learned **to switch** their anticipatory gaze in the new direction while the other babies did not.

Bilingualism’s effects also extend into the twilight years. In a recent study of 44 elderly Spanish-English bilinguals, scientists led by the neuropsychologist Tamar Gollan of the University of California, San Diego, found that individuals with a higher degree of bilingualism — measured through a comparative evaluation of proficiency in each language — were more resistant than others to the onset of dementia and other symptoms of Alzheimer’s disease: the higher the degree of bilingualism, the later the age of onset.

Nobody ever doubted the power of language. But who would have imagined that the words we hear and the sentences we speak might be leaving such a deep imprint?

Post-Writing:

- Look up any new vocabulary words
- Read the article again to understand better
- Answer the 4 questions after the article - write the answers in your notebook
- Look at the bold, underlined expressions - if they include a gerund or infinitive, try to explain why it is used in each case

Read and annotate ‘Why Bilinguals Are Smarter’. Pay attention to **the bold, underlined expressions** – can you explain why they are used? Then answer the following questions:

1. What is the main point of the story?
2. What did people use to think about bilingualism?
3. What has research shown about the connection between bilingualism and the ability to pay attention?
4. What has research shown about the connection between bilingualism and Alzheimer’s?

This page titled [9.1: Introduction to-Gerunds and Infinitives- Reading](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

9.2: Gerunds Introduced

A Noun Phrase vs. A Gerund Clause

NOUN PHRASE & PREDICATE	
An activity may be expressed with a noun phrase and a predicate (verb). In traditional grammar, it was said that a noun "acts as" the subject. However, current linguistic description separates <i>what a word does from what it is called</i> . In fact, a wide variety of structures (nouns, gerunds, infinitives and clauses) can function as the subject within a clause. See Function v. Category .	
SUBJECT (NOUN PHRASE)	PREDICATE + COMPLEMENT
Computers noun	save a lot of time
Online study noun phrase	is very convenient.
The online practices noun phrase	help students without books. (PP)
The computer in my room noun phrase	allows me to study from home.

GERUND	
An activity may also be expressed with a gerund or a gerund nonfinite clause (newer description). This word or structure can function as the subject, verbal complement ("object") or modifier in the matrix "main" clause. See Gerundial Nonfinite Clause and A Clause: Phrase, Nonfinite & Finite for Word Categories . See Subject, Predicate, Complement for Functions .	
SUBJECT (GERUND CLAUSE)	PREDICATE + COMPLEMENT
Computing gerund	saves a lot of time.
Studying online gerund nonfinite clause	is very convenient.
Using online practices gerund nonfinite clause	helps students who don't have books.
Working from home gerund nonfinite clause	allows a person to work in comfort.

complement (N) – in grammar, a word, phrase or clause required to complete another element in the clause, for example, the verb "hung" requires a location. *He hung UP his coat. He hung his coat on the hook.* The prepositional phrase complements "completes" the verb, See [Complements](#).

See [Grammar Notes](#) (section below) for **Lexical Categories "Parts of Speech"** (V, NP, AdjP) and **Grammatical Functions** (Subj, Pred, Comp).

Also see [Noun vs. Gerund](#). *The landing of the airplane* (NP) vs. *Landing an airplane*. (GER)

Also see [A Verb vs. A Verb Phrase vs. The Predicate](#)

Also see [Verbs: Two Basic Categories — Primary v. Secondary](#)

Gerund Clause Agreement

Express one or more activities

Gerund Clause Agreement with Predicate

SINGULAR

A gerund clause is usually singular in agreement with the verb. Two clauses coordinated with **or** or **nor** are also singular in agreement.

Reading books is important for learning vocabulary.

Texting while driving is dangerous.

Texting or holding a phone is allowed when parked.

Neither texting nor holding a phone is allowed while driving.

PLURAL

Two gerund clauses coordinated with **and** are plural in agreement.

Reading and listening to the television are two ways to improve your vocabulary.

Emailing and texting are illegal activities for drivers behind the wheel.

Practice 1

Buying and Selling Online



Read Context

Ebay — Buying, Selling and Trading

Ebay is the Internet version of the "flea market". People can **list items** they would like to sell and **find items** they'd like to buy. The eBay site allows users to **search for item descriptions**. Sellers can **post their items**, **change the item category**, **showcase the item** and **view bids on the item**.

Purchasers can **verify the authenticity of an item**, **purchase insurance**, **put the item in escrow** and even **get help with disputes when there is a disagreement**. Buying, selling and trading are very efficiently done via the Web.

authenticity (N) — the quality of being real or true

bid (N) – an offer to pay a particular price for something

category (N) — a group of things that are all the same type or kind

dispute (N) — a serious argument or disagreement

escrow (N) a service that holds the money while the agreement is being made

flea market (N) — an open air market to which people bring old things to sell

insurance (N) — a policy that returns money to a person if there is accidental loss

list (V) — post items for sale on the Internet; put something on an official list

purchaser (N) — buyer

resolve (V) — to find a satisfactory way of dealing with a problem or difficulty

showcase (V) – a place (or page) that shows the good qualities of something

trade (N) — exchange something of equal value

verify authenticity (v) – make sure it truly is what the seller says it is

version (N) — a copy of something that has been changed so that it is slightly different

Page from [Grammar Quizzes](#)-licenced under Creative Common Share Alike 4 International

This page titled [9.2: Gerunds Introduced](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

9.3: Gerunds Practice

This page titled [9.3: Gerunds Practice](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

9.3.1: Gerund as Subject

GERUND AS SUBJECT

Fill in each blank with a gerund or a gerund phrase. Choose an activity that logically completes the sentence.

1. _____ is fun.
2. _____ is dangerous.
3. _____ is exciting.
4. _____ is important.
5. _____ is a good way to improve your English.
6. _____ is expensive.
7. _____ is necessary.
8. _____ is wrong.
9. _____ is easy to do.
10. _____ is bad for your health.
11. _____ is good for your health.
12. _____ is a great way to lose weight.
13. _____ and _____ are my hobbies.

This page titled [9.3.1: Gerund as Subject](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

9.3.2: Gerunds - Questions

Writing Practice

Answer the following questions:

As you answer, make sure to:

- Write a complete sentence to answer each question.
- Use a gerund in your answer.
- Use the question as a guide to help you write your answer correctly.
- Pay attention to verb tenses and sentence structure.

Questions:

1. What do you regret not doing in the past?
2. If you have a sunburn, what could you try doing?
3. What are you good at doing?
4. What are you interested in learning about? [something new]
5. What do you look forward to doing during the Christmas holiday?
6. What are you most proud of?
7. What have you gotten accustomed to doing since you came here?
8. What is something you can't stand doing?
9. What is the last thing you postponed doing?

This page titled [9.3.2: Gerunds - Questions](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

9.3.3: Verb + Gerund

Complete each of the following sentences using a logical gerund phrase.

Then, write a few more sentences to further explain your answer.

1. I often put off _____.
2. I miss _____.
3. I would like to quit _____.
4. I need to practice _____.
5. I dislike _____.
6. I usually avoid _____.
7. I enjoy _____ on the weekends.
8. I need to finish _____.
9. Last week, I postponed _____.
10. If you visit my country, I suggest _____.

This page titled [9.3.3: Verb + Gerund](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

9.3.4: Adjective+Preposition+Gerund

PREPOSITIONS

What is the correct preposition after each of the following? Write the preposition after the word. You may need a learner's dictionary to help you out: [Cambridge Learner's Dictionary](#)

- Afraid
- Tired
- Interested
- Believe
- Good
- Accustomed
- Worry
- Care
- Look forward
- Proud
- Dream
- Depend
- Responsible

This page titled [9.3.4: Adjective+Preposition+Gerund](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

9.3.5: Gerunds - Find Someone Who - Questions

GERUNDS – REVIEW

Find someone who ...

Walk around the classroom and speak to different people. Ask one question per person. If they answer ‘yes’, think of more related questions to ask about the topic → have a mini-conversation together about this topic. If they say ‘no’, say ‘thanks’, and ‘good bye’ and move on to ask another person.

e.g. *Do you enjoy playing sports?*

OR:

Yes, I do.

No, I don't.

What types of sports do you play?

OK, thanks. See you later.

I play soccer.

Bye.

How often do you play soccer?

I play soccer every weekend.

1. enjoys **playing** sports
2. believes **dancing** is fun
3. likes to go **camping**
4. puts off **doing** his/her laundry
5. practices **speaking** English everyday
6. plans on **traveling** during the holidays
7. is interested in **taking** more classes at Contra Costa College
8. is proud of **having** wonderful children
9. dreams about **winning** the lottery!

This page titled [9.3.5: Gerunds - Find Someone Who - Questions](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

9.3.6: Gerunds in Go Expressions

Gerunds in Go Expressions

The following are common expressions used with go + gerund:

- go bowling
- go camping
- go dancing
- go fishing
- go hiking
- go hunting
- go jogging
- go sailing
- go shopping
- go sightseeing
- go skating
- go skiing
- go swimming

Note: You CANNOT create your own expression! For example, you cannot say: 'go eating' or 'go playing'. The above are fixed expressions.

Answer the following questions about yourself:

Write a complete sentence to answer each question. Make sure to use the go+gerund expression in your answer. Pay attention to using the correct verb tense.

1. Where is a good place to go camping in your country?
2. What is the best place to go sightseeing in your country?
3. Where do you usually go shopping?
4. Do you like to go dancing in clubs?
5. Who usually goes grocery shopping for you and your family?
6. Have you ever gone hiking in a National Park?

This page titled [9.3.6: Gerunds in Go Expressions](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

9.3.7: Gerunds - Review

REVIEW

Fill in the blanks with an appropriate expression.

Gerund as a subject:

→ _____ is fun.

→ _____ is expensive.

Gerund after certain verbs:

[e.g., dislike, enjoy, miss, ...] → I enjoy _____ with friends.

Gerund in 'go' expressions:

Sports: go swimming, go jogging, ... → I often go _____ to stay healthy.

Free-time activities: go shopping, go dancing, ... → I like to go _____ with friends on the weekends.

Gerund after a preposition:

[verb + preposition + gerund] → I dream about _____.

[adjective + preposition + gerund] → I am good at _____.

Gerund in an adverbial:

[in phrases with: after, before, by, without, ...] → You can't do well on tests without _____.

This page titled [9.3.7: Gerunds - Review](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

9.4: Gerund Rules - Review

Gerunds Review

Look at the following information about gerunds. Read each rule and the examples for it. For each example, highlight the gerund.

1. Gerund as a subject

- Sleeping in on weekends is great!
- Not having any responsibility can spoil children.
- Living in the Bay Area has become very expensive.

2. Gerund after some verbs

- I dislike washing dishes.
- She enjoys jogging in the park in the morning.
- She enjoyed not having any responsibilities when she was a child.

3. Gerund after prepositions

- She is planning on visiting her family tonight.
- I am not excited about working this weekend.
- He looks forward to not having any homework during the holidays.

4. Gerunds in 'go' expressions

- She goes hiking with her friends every Sunday.
- We went dancing last weekend.
- They go camping every summer.

5. Gerunds in adverbials

- I left home without taking my wallet.
- He met his friends after finishing his work.
- She has improved her language skills by reading extensively.

This page titled [9.4: Gerund Rules - Review](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

9.5: Gerunds-Form and Usage

Gerunds

I. Basic Ideas and Principles

A gerund is the *ing* form of the verb (present participle) used as a noun. Therefore, it can occur in all the same places that a noun can occur in a sentence: subject, object, complement, object of a preposition and appositive.

II. Gerunds

I. The following verbs **take a gerund after them**. The ones with an * next to them can also take an infinitive after them with no change in meaning.

admit	advise*	allow	avoid	begin/start*	consider
continue*	can't help	dislike/hate	delay/postpone	deny	enjoy
finish	imagine	like/love*	miss	permit	prefer*
quit	regret	suggest			

Examples:

I dislike **working** on Sundays.

He missed **seeing** his father every day.

She can't help **being** sick.

I began **going** to school when I was six years old. / I began to go to school

They loved **eating** pizza every Friday evening. / They loved to eat pizza

III. Possessive Gerunds

The following verbs can take a possessive noun or a possessive adjective after them and before a gerund. **This is especially true in formal grammar. In informal grammar, native speakers tend to use regular nouns and object pronouns.**

advise	appreciate	consider	enjoy	forbid
hate/dislike	imagine	like/love	permit	postpone
prefer	regret	remember	suggest	understand

The possessive adjectives are the following: my, your, his, her, its, our, your, their. They are always followed by a noun or a gerund.

Examples:

The doctor does not permit **my carrying** heavy boxes.

The neighbors do not like **your playing** music at night.

I can't imagine **their winning** the game.

Possessive nouns end in an apostrophe s ('s) if the noun is singular or in an s apostrophe (s') if the noun is plural.

Examples:

Singular	Plural
The boy's father	The boy's father
The teacher's books	the teachers' books
My sister's dresses	My sisters' dresses

Form: Subject + Verb + Possessive Form + Gerund+ Remainder of the Sentence

Examples:

I appreciate **your skipping** lines when you do your homework.

He defended the **woman's killing** her husband because he had beaten her for many years.

I suggest **your studying** hard for the exam next week.

We regretted **their not being** able to come to the party.

She hated **Bob's hanging** around with those lazy boys.

IV. Gerunds after Prepositions

When a verb follows a preposition, the verb **must always be in the ing form of the verb**, in other words, **the present participle form**.

Examples:

I have always been interested **in studying** history all my life.

Many students are worried **about attending** regular classes with native English speakers.

Teachers disapprove **of cheating** on exams and quizzes.

Because **of cheating**, many students fail exams and compositions.

In spite of losing the game, the players were still happy about playing.

This page titled [9.5: Gerunds-Form and Usage](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

9.6: Infinitives-Form and Usage

V. Infinitives

An infinitive is the *base form of the verb* with *to* in front of it. For example, *to go*, *to run*, *to die*, *to love*, etc. are infinitives. An infinitive can be used as a noun. Thus, infinitives are used as subjects, direct objects, complements, appositives, adverbials and adjective modifiers. **However, infinitives can never be used as the object of a preposition.**

The following verbs are followed by an infinitive:

Agree	Afford	Consent	Decide	Arrange	Decline	Expect	Attempt	Undertake	Hope
Deserve									
Intend	Fail	Can't wait	Learn	Hesitate	Mean	Like	Manage	Need	Offer
Plan		Pretend	Strive	Try	Refuse	Seek	Want	Seem	Cease
Promise									

Examples

I agreed to go to the party with my wife.

We plan to buy a new car next year.

The boy wants to stay overnight at his friend's house.

The teacher promised to give the students an examination next week.

My son refused to go to the University of Washington.

Children sometimes pretend to be sick when they don't want to go to school.

I hesitate to borrow anything from anybody.

Students need to manage to go to school, work, and take care of their families every day.

I can't afford to buy a new car. I don't have enough money.

Exercise 25: Answer the following questions by using a verb followed by an infinitive, please.

1. Why do you want to learn English?
2. Where do you intend to go after class today?
3. What kind of food do you like to eat?
4. What do you hesitate to do because you are afraid?
5. What do you seek to do in the next year?
6. Tell me something you can't wait to do.
7. What do little boys pretend to be?
8. What do you strive to do in your life all the time?
9. What do you need to do before you come to class tomorrow?
10. What can't you afford to buy before next year?
11. Where do you hope to live 10 years from now?
12. Tell me something you would refuse to do.
13. Tell me something that you try to do every day.

Exercise 26: Use the following words in a well-written sentences.

1. to prepare
2. to intend

3. to decide
4. to dread
5. to refuse
6. to offer
7. to hesitate
8. to arrange
9. to attempt
10. to undertake
11. to seek
12. to agree

VI. Negative Infinitives

To make infinitives negative, put **not** before them.

Examples

The student promised not to come to class late anymore.

I preferred not to eat out in a restaurant.

The old man prefers not to drive at night.

The boy is planning not to go to college.

My sons often arrange not to be available when I need them to help me in the garden.

My son pretended not to feel well when my wife asked him to clean the bathrooms.

VII. Infinitives with Different Subjects

It is possible in a sentence to have the subject of the sentence be different from the subject of the infinitive. The following are some verbs that can take a different subject for the infinitive:

Would like	Persuade	Challenge	Expect	Get	Require	Tell	Force	Encourage	Advise
Help									
Enable	Order	Permit	Direct	Urge	Invite	Prepare	Allow	Ask	Teach

Examples

I wanted André to go to the store for some milk.

We need Alex to lift up the heavy boxes.

I expected my students to do their homework every night.

I would like my friend to help me on Sunday.

The wife persuaded her husband to go to the doctor's.

The girl invited her friends to come to the party.

The teacher urged the students to study.

VIII. Infinitives with Adjectives before Them

Infinitives often follow adjectives. The infinitive is the complement of the adjective because the adjective needs the infinitive to give meaning to the adjective. Very often adjectives with infinitive complements follow sentences that begin with the expletive **It**. **It** has no meaning in these sentences; it is just serving as the subject of the sentence.

Examples

The English teacher was happy to help the student with her composition.

My wife was delighted to bake a birthday cake for our sons when they were boys.

It is difficult to learn English grammar.

All of the students were unhappy to hear the results of the examination.

My father was always willing to take all of my friends fishing when I was a boy.

I am content to continue to teach for a long time.

It is easy to ride a bicycle.

It is enjoyable to lie on a beach and do nothing.

It is impossible for a man to have a baby.

It is advisable to study before an examination.

It isn't smart to speed in a car on snow.

It is foolish to waste money on stupid things.

It is unethical to cheat on an examination.

IX. Infinitives with Adjectives and Too and Enough and Very

Too, *Enough* and *Very* are called **quantifiers** in grammar. *Too* means that something is excessive. It is negative in meaning. *Enough* means that something is sufficient. It is affirmative in meaning. *Very* only means to a high degree, "a lot." *Very* does not say either excessive or sufficient; it just says *a lot*. Many times people use the preposition *for* with these words.

Examples:

A new car is too expensive to buy. I can't buy one.

I am too old to play football. I can't play anymore.

To speak Chinese is too difficult for me to do. I can't do it.

My sister is too short to reach the shelves in the cupboard. She is only 5 feet tall.

It is too cold for people to go outside in winter. People don't want to go outside.

The hat is too small for my son to wear. He can't wear it. His head is too big.

I am old enough to be your grandfather. I am just waiting for my sons to become fathers.

Sixteen-year-old children are old enough to drive. They can drive legally.

My son is strong enough to lift 200 pounds. He is strong enough. He can do it.

This exercise is easy enough for my students to do. They can do it.

The weather in the summer is warm enough for people to go swimming in Green Lake. They can go swimming.

The girl is very beautiful. Men and women think she looks great.

My sister is very kind to animals and people. She is never mean or not nice to anyone.

Alaska is very cold in winter. Bears like it, but most people don't like living there.

New houses are very expensive to buy in the Seattle area. Only people with money can buy one.

Exercise 27: Answer the following question using a negative infinitive, please.

1. Tell me something you decided not to do.
2. Who do you not want to talk to?
3. Tell me a job you intend not to seek.

4. Tell me something you try not to do.
5. Tell me something you promised your mother not to do when you were a boy or girl.
6. What do you hope never to happen to you.
7. What will you need not to learn in your life?
8. What did you manage not to do last week?
9. Tell me something you decided not to buy.
10. What did you learn not to do when you were younger?
11. When did you mean not to say something?
12. What would parents not like their children to do?
13. What do you hope not to do again in the future?

Exercise 28: Answer the following questions with infinitives with different subjects, please.

1. What would you like me to do?
2. Who did you help to do something recently?
3. What did your parents permit you to do when you were younger?
4. What do I require you to do when you do homework for me?
5. What did your parents require you to do when you were younger?
6. What did you urge someone to do?
7. What do I allow you to do in my classroom?
8. Who persuaded you to come to America?
9. Who sometimes needs you to help them?
10. What do teachers expect their students to do?
11. What will learning English enable you to do?
12. What did your father permit you to do?
13. What is it sometimes difficult to get babies to do?

Exercise 29: Answer the following questions using an adjective followed by an infinitive, please.

1. Tell me something that is fun to do.
2. Tell me something that is difficult to do.
3. Tell me something that is enjoyable to do.
4. Tell me a game that is fun to play.
5. Tell me something that is not good to do.
6. Tell me something that is stupid to do.
7. Tell me something that is important to do.
8. Tell me something that is unlucky to do in your culture.
9. Tell me something that you are too old to do.
10. Tell me something that you are sometimes too tired to do.
11. Tell me something that is too expensive for you to buy.
12. Tell me something that is too difficult for old people to do.

13. Tell me something that is too heavy for you to lift.

X. Infinitives after Nouns

Infinitives sometimes follow nouns to express the purpose of the nouns.

Examples

I bought a new chair to sit on.

My friend uses a hose to water his garden.

I use an old knife to peel apples with.

My wife uses pots and pans to cook food in.

I have red pens to correct papers with.

He took out a handkerchief to blow his nose.

The policeman pulled out his gun to shoot the robber.

The violinist picked up his violin to play the musical piece he wrote.

XI. Verbs (*Forget, Remember, Stop, Quit*) that Have Different Meanings when Followed by a Gerund than when followed by an Infinitive

Forget + Infinitive: The forgetting occurs before the idea of the infinitive didn't happen.

Examples:

The man forgot to buy milk on his way home from work. [First, the man forgot, so he didn't buy the milk.]

I forgot to feed the dog. [First I forgot, so I didn't feed the dog.]

My sister forgot to send me a birthday card. [First she forgot, so she didn't send me a card.]

Forget + Gerund: The forgetting occurs after the idea of the gerund did happen.

Examples:

I forgot taking my medicine. [First I took the medicine, and then I forgot that I took it.]

The teacher forgot making copies of an assignment for his students. [First the teacher made the copies, and then he forgot that he had already made them.]

The old man forgot telling me the story. [First the old man told me the story, and then he told me the same story again because he didn't remember telling me the story before.]

Remember + Infinitive: Someone is telling the person not to forget to do something.

Examples:

I want my students to remember to study the past participles before the final exam. Don't forget to study them.

My son remembered to call home last night from Japan. He called home around 11:00 PM last night. He didn't forget to call home.

Remember + Gerund: The remembering takes place after the action of the gerund. It means not forgetting that you did something.

Examples:

I remember sending her a birthday day card. I sent the card and I remember that I sent it.

I remember going fishing with my father when I was a boy. I remember that we went fishing. I won't ever forget that we went fishing together.

When I was with my sister last summer, we were talking about old times. We both remembered my having to go to her kindergarten class to sit with her because she was afraid and crying.

Stop + Infinitive: The stopping of one action takes place before another action happens.

Examples:

While the man was driving home from work, he stopped to buy some milk at Safeway.

The boy was playing a video game, but he stopped [playing the video game] to eat dinner with his family.

While the young men were sitting and talking in a café, they stopped to look at a pretty girl who was walking by the café window.

Stop + Gerund: The stopping of one action is complete at least for a short while.

Examples:

At the age of 35, my brother stopped smoking. He never smoked again.

I wish my students would stop making mistakes in grammar and writing.

The man's heart stopped beating when he died.

Quit + Infinitive: The quitting of one action takes place before another action happens.

Examples:

The boy quit (school) to take a job.

The men quit working for fifteen minutes to take a break.

The students were arguing. They quit arguing when the teacher came into the room.

Quit + Gerund: The quitting of one action is complete at least for a short while.

Examples:

The man's wife quit complaining about his being a couch potato.

I quit trying to learn Portuguese.

It quit raining in Seattle last week.

This page titled [9.6: Infinitives-Form and Usage](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

9.6.1: Infinitives After Objects or Object Pronouns

Infinitives after Objects or Object Pronouns

We often use an object between the following verbs and an infinitive:

- Advise - I **advise** my students to do all their homework.
- Allow- Many parents **don't allow** their children to stay out after 10 pm.
- Ask - She **asked** her mother to help her bake a cake.
- Expect - My best friend **expects** me to call her every day.
- Invite - They **invited** their friends to join them on a camping trip.
- Need - I **need** you to help me later.
- Permit - Would you **permit** me to leave ten minutes early, please?
- Tell - I **told** you to study before the test!
- Want - She **wants** her parents to support her decision.
- Would like - I **would like** my neighbors to be quieter.

In each of the following sentences, highlight the object and underline the infinitive [phrase].

1. I want you to help me after class.
2. She invited her friends to have dinner with her.
3. My counselor advised me to take this class.
4. I expect you to study before the test.

Check the answers below:

1. I want **you** to help me after class.
2. She invited **her friends** to have dinner with her.
3. My counselor advised **me** to take this class.
4. I expect **you** to study before the test.

Now, answer the following questions. Pay attention to using an infinitive after the object.

1. What do parents **expect their children to do**?
2. Imagine someone is going to visit your country. Where would you **advise him/her to go**?
3. Imagine you are going to meet with the president of this country. What would you **ask him to do**?
4. Imagine it is your birthday and you want to spend time with your friends. What would you **invite them to do**?

This page titled [9.6.1: Infinitives After Objects or Object Pronouns](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

9.6.2: Infinitives To Show Purpose

Infinitives to Show Purpose

- I went to the store **to buy some fruits and vegetables.**
- She is saving her money **to go on vacation.**
- They have been studying for hours **to prepare for the test.**
- **To prepare for the test,** they have been studying for hours.

Complete each sentence by using an infinitive to show the purpose or the reason:

e.g., I had to go to the store *to buy some groceries.*

1. People go to the post office _____.
2. I am coming to the college _____.
3. _____ I am taking a grammar class.
4. My friend called me _____.
5. _____ I try to exercise regularly.
6. Every day, she calls her mother _____.
7. We study grammar _____.
8. People are now social distancing _____.

This page titled [9.6.2: Infinitives To Show Purpose](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

9.7: Infinitives Practice-"It is.."

Infinitives in 'It is ...' Expressions

Complete each statement with an infinitive phrase. You can add an object if you like.

e.g. It is difficult [for me] to ride a motorcycle.

1. It's important
2. It's impossible
3. It's necessary
4. It's dangerous
5. It's wrong
6. It's great
7. It's expensive
8. It's fun
9. It's good
10. It's easy

Rewrite your sentences above to use a gerund as a subject.

*e.g. It is difficult [for me] to ride a motorcycle. → **Riding a motorcycle** is difficult [for me].*

Exercise by Noshi Borhan

Contra Costa College

This page titled [9.7: Infinitives Practice-"It is.."](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

9.7.1: Infinitives Review

Infinitives - Review

1. In 'It is' Phrases
2. After certain verbs
3. After an object or object pronoun
4. After some adjectives
5. To show purpose

Complete each of the following with a logical infinitive phrase. Then explain which of the above rules explains the use of the infinitive. The first one is done for you as an example.

1. It is impossible **to get a good job without having work experience.** [#1]
2. It is wonderful _____ on a rainy day.
3. In ten years, I would like _____.
4. When I was a child, my parents expected me _____ every week.
5. If you want to buy a car, I advise you _____.
6. I went to San Francisco _____.
7. I am very happy _____.
8. This weekend, I need _____.
9. I asked my best friend _____.
10. I called my best friend _____.

This page titled [9.7.1: Infinitives Review](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

9.7.2: Infinitives – Writing

Infinitives – Writing

To do the activity well:

- Read each question carefully.
- Think about what you want to answer.
- Use the question as a guide to write your answer.
- Make sure to begin with the subject of the action - e.g., *I, it, or My parents, ...*
- Pay attention to verb tenses - use the same verb tense as in the question.
- Make sure to use an infinitive in your answer - pay attention to the words in bold to help you.

Questions:

1. What do you **hope to do** next year?
2. What is something that you **refuse to do**?
3. What do you **expect your children to do**?
4. What is something you are not **permitted to do**?
5. What is **necessary for you to do** every day?
6. What do you have to **remember to do** every weekend?
7. What are you **ready to do** after class?
8. What is **difficult for new immigrants to do**?
9. Where do you **hope to go** on your next vacation?
10. What did you **need to do** before you came to the U.S.?
11. What did your parents **advise you to do** when you were a child?

This page titled [9.7.2: Infinitives – Writing](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

9.7.3: Infinitives – More Questions

Infinitives – More questions

Answer each question with a complete sentence. Make sure to use the infinitive appropriately. Use the question as a guide to help you construct correct sentences.

1. What are 3 things you **try to do** to improve your English skills?
2. Think of something you have attempted to do in the past but was difficult for you. What did you **attempt to do** and why was it difficult for you to do?
3. Where would you **advise a traveler to visit** in your country?
4. What is **great to do** on weekends?
5. What are you **afraid to do**?
6. What would you **not permit your children to do**?
7. What is **fun to do** on a Saturday night?
8. Where do you **prefer to live** in your old age? Why?
9. What do you **hope to do** after finishing your ESL classes?

This page titled [9.7.3: Infinitives – More Questions](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

9.8: Practice-Gerunds and Infinitives

This page titled [9.8: Practice-Gerunds and Infinitives](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

9.8.1: Gerunds + Infinitives Review

Five Simple Rules to Remember about the Use of Gerunds and Infinitives

Rule 1: Gerunds can be used as a subject of a sentence.

Take a look at some examples.

Walking is good for your health.

Making friends has become more difficult since I moved to a new city.

Becoming a millionaire is a dream of many young people today.

Here, the gerunds (in bold) are part of the sentence subjects (“walking,” “making friends,” “becoming a millionaire”). All three sentences sound like normal, everyday English.

Now read these two sentences:

“***To be*** or not to be—that is the question.”

“***To mourn*** a mischief that is past and gone is the next way to draw new mischief on.”

(Both sentences are quotes from William Shakespeare’s works.)

They sound formal, don’t they? They are poetic, aren’t they? Shakespeare is one of the greatest authors of all time, but his English is famously difficult to understand. And that’s because it is literature. It is formal and it is art.

In those two quotes, the infinitives “to be” and “to mourn” are used as the sentence subjects.

So, it is possible to use both infinitives and gerunds as subjects, but gerunds are much more commonly used as subjects. Just pay attention to how the choice reflects on the tone and meaning of your sentences.

Rule 2: Both gerunds and infinitives can be used as objects of a sentence.

You may say: “I enjoy ***drawing***.”

You may also say: “Yesterday, I decided ***to draw***.”

Both sentences are correct, but one has an infinitive as the object and the other has a gerund as the object.

What is the difference? (see page 377 in Elements of Success 3.)

It’s the verbs that precede (come before) the object! Some verbs require a gerund and some will require an infinitive. In the above examples, we can see that the formula is “**enjoy**” + [gerund] and “**decide**” + [infinitive].

With practice, you will be able to remember which one is which.

Here are a few examples of **verbs that need to be followed by an infinitive**:

- **agree**: I *agreed to go* to a party with my friend.
- **decide**: The president *decided not to participate* in the discussions.
- **deserve**: Everyone *deserves to be* respected.
- **expect**: I *expect to know* my exam grade by tomorrow.
- **hope**: We were *hoping to avoid* traffic by leaving early.
- **learn**: He *learned not to trust* anyone.
- **need**: She *needs to learn* how to cook.
- **offer**: I *offered to help* my brother with homework.
- **plan**: We are *planning to watch* a movie tonight.
- **promise**: My friend *promised to find* the time to help me move.

- **seem:** We *seem to be* lost.
- **wait:** I cannot wait to see my family.
- **want:** I don't want to go to bed yet.

There are a lot of verbs that require an infinitive after. You will learn them naturally, as you progress in your English studies.

And here are a few examples of **verbs that need to be followed by a gerund**:

- **admit:** They *admitted changing* the schedule.
- **advise:** I *advise proceeding* (moving forward) with caution.
- **avoid:** She *avoided looking* me in the eye.
- **consider** (think about): I *considered staying* silent, but I had to tell her.
- **deny:** I *denied knowing* about his secret.
- **involve:** The course *involved writing* three tests.
- **mention** (say something): She *mentioned seeing* my brother at a baseball game.
- **recommend:** I *recommend practicing* gerunds and infinitives.
- **risk:** Don't risk *losing* your job!
- **suggest:** I *suggest reading* more English short stories.

Rule 3: Infinitives should be used after many adjectives.

Here are three sample sentences that will help to illustrate this rule:

It is not easy **to graduate** from university.

It is necessary **to speak** English *to work in a hotel*.

It is wonderful **to have** close friends.

When you describe something with an adjective (underlined in the examples above), an infinitive should follow (in bold). Using gerunds here would be incorrect.

But remember! If you want to make that object into a subject (see Rule 1), a gerund should be used:

Graduating from a university is not easy.

Speaking English is necessary to work in a hotel.

Having close friends is wonderful.

How else do you know if an adjective should be followed by an infinitive? The construct “**too + [adjective]**” is another way to tell!

For example:

This dress is too big **to wear**.

This car is too expensive **to buy**.

And the same is true about “[adjective] + enough”:

My child is not tall enough **to ride** this rollercoaster.

The course was detailed enough **to widen** his knowledge base.

This rule is useful enough **to understand** the usage of infinitives!

Rule 4: Only infinitives are used after sentence objects that are nouns or pronouns referring to a person.

“We asked her not to go.”

In this sentence, “we” is the subject, “asked” is the verb and “her” is the objective form of the pronoun “she.” You must use an infinitive (“to go”), never a gerund, after direct and indirect objects referring to people.

To remember this rule, you will have to study **verbs that take an object and an infinitive**.

Start with these examples. The objects (nouns and pronouns) are underlined. Notice how the underlined objects are all followed by infinitives.

- **ask:** Can I ask you *to help* me with something?
- **expect:** I never expected him *to become* famous.
- **need:** Honey, I need you *to help* me with this heavy box.
- **want:** Johnny, I want you *to come* home right away.
- **teach:** She taught her sister *to read*.
- **remind:** Please remind me *to wash* the dishes.
- **advise:** Dan advised Shelly *to concentrate* on her studies.
- **teach:** That will teach you *to follow* the rules!
- **tell:** Who told you *to come* here?
- **urge:** They urged the scientists *to continue* with their research.
- **warn:** I am warning you *not to do* this!
- **persuade:** How can I persuade you *to join* us tonight?
- **order:** The police officer ordered my brother and me *to leave*.
- **encourage:** My parents always encourage me *to succeed*.
- **remind:** The professor reminded her students *to study* for the test.

Rule 5: Only gerunds are used after prepositions.

Consider this sentence:

I talked him out of taking that job.

Here, the gerund “taking” follows the preposition “of.”

Prepositions can follow any word, be it a noun, a pronoun, a verb or an adjective. In the examples below, the prepositions are underlined, followed by the gerunds in bold.

A preposition that follows a noun:

*Novels about **growing up** are popular among teenagers.*

*I have an interest in **becoming** a painter.*

A preposition that follows a pronoun:

*I forgive you for **not telling** the truth.*

A preposition that follows a verb:

*She is thinking about **trying** martial arts.*

*He looks forward to **meeting** his cousins.*

A preposition that follows an adjective:

*I am unhappy about **going** alone.*

*My mom is scared of **flying**.*

Gerunds and infinitives may be confusing, but they make your English speech more varied and colorful. It is very useful to study them and practice using them correctly. The more you notice gerunds and infinitives in your study of the English language, the easier it will get!

Sometimes you will be unsure if you need to use an infinitive or a gerund in a sentence. In this situation, try changing the sentence and saying what you want to say in a different way.

[Let's review:](#)

Complete each example with a logical thought.

Gerunds

1. As subject:

- _____ is fun.

2. After some verbs:

- I enjoy _____.
- I dislike _____.

3. After prepositions:

- I worry about _____.
- I dream about _____.
- I look forward to _____.

4. In 'go' expressions:

- I go _____ every weekend.

5. In adverbials: *[After: by/before/after/without]*

- I left home without _____.

Infinitives

1. In 'It is _____' expressions:

- It is fun _____.
- It is difficult for me _____.

2. After some verbs:

- I want _____.
- I need _____.

3. After some adjectives:

- I am happy _____.
- I am ready _____.

4. After an object:

- My teacher expects me _____.
- I asked my friend _____.

5. To show purpose:

- I am taking this class _____.
- I came to the U.S. _____.

This page titled [9.8.1: Gerunds + Infinitives Review](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

9.8.2: Gerunds + Infinitives Exercises

Exercise 1: Gerunds & Infinitives - Questions

Write a complete sentence to answer each question. Make sure to:

- Use a gerund or an infinitive in your answer
 - Follow the question as a guide
 - Use the correct verb tense in your answer
1. What were you **good at doing** when you were a child? Are you still good at doing this?
 2. What is most **important for parents to teach** their children?
 3. Where do you **plan on going** after class?
 4. What did you **want to be** when you were a child?
 5. Who do you **look forward to seeing** more than anyone else?
 6. If your friend was in need of some money, what would you **advise him/her to do**?
 7. When you were a child, what were you **responsible for doing**?
 8. What did you **need to do** last weekend?
 9. How often do you **go dancing**?

Exercise 2: Fill-in-the-blank

GERUND OR INFINITIVE?

Supply an appropriate GERUND or INFINITIVE of the verbs in parentheses:

1. Mary reminded me (be / not) late for the meeting.
2. We went for a walk after we finished (clean) up the kitchen.
3. When do you expect (leave) on your trip?
4. The baby started (talk) when she was about eighteen months old.
5. I'm getting tired. I need (take) a break.
6. I've decided(stay) here over vacation and(paint) my room.
7. Sometimes students avoid (look) at the teacher if they don't want (answer) a question.
8. The travel agent advised us (not / wait) until August.
9. Could you please stop (make) so much noise?
10. Mrs. Allen promised (come) tomorrow.
11. My boss expects me (complete) this work as soon as possible.
12. Even though I asked the people in front of me at the movie (be) quiet, they kept (talk).
13. Joan and David were considering (get) married in June, but they finally decided (wait) until August.
14. He doesn't mind (be) alone.
15. The teacher seems (be) in a good mood today.
16. Mrs. Jackson warned her young son (not / touch) the hot stove.

17. Jack advised me (rent) a new apartment.
18. His teacher encourages him (study) harder.

Exercise 3: Complete the Sentence

Make your own sentences using the sentence beginners. Do you need to use a gerund or infinitive? Try to write your sentences about your hobbies.

1. I have a difficult time _____.
2. I waste a lot of time _____.
3. On the weekend I often lie on my bed _____.
4. In my free time, I like to _____.
5. I would like _____.
6. I can't stand _____.
7. It is a bad idea _____.
8. It takes patience _____.
9. It is dangerous _____.
10. It's too easy _____.
11. I am not strong enough _____.
12. I don't have enough money _____.

Exercise 4: Fill-in-the-Blank

Fill in the blank with a gerund or infinitive.

_____ movies is my favorite hobby. I like _____ American movies and TV series. I think it's the easiest way _____ fun and practice _____ English. I usually watch movies after doing my homework because it encourages me _____ my homework. _____ movies can truly help me _____ my listening skill. My teacher recommended _____ movies with subtitles if I thought they spoke too fast. Subtitles have made it possible _____ my vocabulary. _____ the actors' expressions can help me learn new words. Sometimes it's too difficult _____ every word they say, so I guess the meaning by _____ their body language. The most important thing _____ the right movies. I used _____ movies with many difficult words and I found it was boring and annoying _____ the movies so often _____ new vocabulary words. It made me _____ bored. So, I

Exercise 2: Original Work by Allyson Marceau

Exercises 3 and 4 from [It's All Greek to Me!](#) Copyright © 2018 by Charity Davenport licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#)

This page titled [9.8.2: Gerunds + Infinitives Exercises](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

9.8.3: Gerunds and Infinitives - Speaking Practice

Work in your teams. Discuss each of the following questions. Pay attention to the correct usage of infinitives or gerunds. Use the questions as a guide to create well-structured sentences that contain either a gerund or an infinitive. Explain your answers by providing details.

1. What do you **enjoy doing** on the weekends?
2. What is your biggest fear? What are you most **afraid of doing**?
3. Imagine it is 10 years from now. Where do you **hope to be living**? What do you **hope to be doing**? How do you **plan on achieving** this goal?
4. What is the most important decision you have ever made? What did you **decide to do**? Was it a good decision? Why?
5. Are you **ready to take** the test on 'gerunds & infinitives'? What do you **need to do** to prepare?
6. Are you **planning on traveling** over the winter break?
7. What do you **look forward to doing** more than anything else? Why is this so important/special to you?

This page titled [9.8.3: Gerunds and Infinitives - Speaking Practice](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

9.8.4: Wedding Interview and Writing

Interview Your Classmate!

Step 1. In your team, there will be one married person. Use the questions below to get as much information as you can about your classmate's wedding. Please note:

- As you ask and answer the questions, pay attention to using the correct verb tenses
- Both the interviewer and the interviewee should take notes on the answers - you don't need to write the whole sentence; just write the key information.

If you need the questions, they are also pasted below:

1. When did you get married?
2. Where did you get married?
3. Did you **prefer to have** a small wedding or a big wedding?
4. How many guests did you have?
5. Did you have fun? Explain.
6. What did you **enjoy doing** the most?
7. Before the wedding, what did you **need to do**?
8. Did you **ask your friends or family to help** you?
9. Did you **practice dancing** with your spouse before the wedding?
10. Did you **keep dancing** all night?
11. What did you **promise your spouse to do** at the wedding?
12. What type of food did you have?
13. How long was the wedding?
14. What kinds of gifts did you get?
15. Did you **put off opening** gifts until after the wedding or did you open them at the wedding?
16. Did you **try to talk** to everyone at your wedding?

Now, think of 3 more questions to ask your partner, to get more information about their wedding.

Make sure you have all the information you need to be able to write the story of your partner's wedding accurately.

Step 2: Writing

- Use the information that you got from interviewing your classmate about his/her wedding to write a paragraph.
- Make sure that your paragraph reads as a story; that means, the ideas and sentences flow logically and smoothly.
- Try to capture the spirit of the story as your classmate told you!
- If you were the person being interviewed [the married person], write about your own wedding, using the same questions .
- Pay attention to using correct verb tenses and use gerunds and infinitives appropriately.

Note: Your paragraph should be about **150-200 words**.

Step 3: Editing

After you finish writing your paragraph, read your writing as a whole. Think about the following:

CONTENT:

- Do you like what you wrote?
- Does it flow logically?
- Do you want to change anything?

MECHANICS:

- Do your sentences all have subjects and verbs?
- Are the verb tenses and forms correct?
- Are you using gerunds and infinitives appropriately [follow questions as guide to help you]?
- Do all your sentences end with a period and begin with a capital letter?

This page titled [9.8.4: Wedding Interview and Writing](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

9.8.5: Error Correction

All of the following sentences contain a mistake. Find the mistakes, hi-light them and correct them. The first one is done for you as an example.

1. He read the whole book **without use** a dictionary. *without using*
2. She insisted in driving me home.
3. I enjoy to walk in the park.
4. He went to shop after work.
5. I decided buy a new car.
6. Find a good job is important.
7. Is important to find a good job.
8. I decided to bought a new car.
9. He wants that I drive.
10. It's important to me to find a job.
11. I called the company for make an appointment.
12. I use to live with my parents. Now I live alone.
13. The teacher expects we do the homework.
14. It's necessary for he to be on time.
15. I need to went to the library last weekend.

Check Your Answers:

1. He read the whole book **without use** a dictionary. *without using*
2. She **insisted in** driving me home. *insisted on*
3. I **enjoy to walk** in the park. *enjoy walking*
4. He **went to shop** after work. *went shopping*
5. I **decided buy** a new car. *decided to buy*
6. **Find** a good job is important. *Finding*
7. **Is** important to find a good job. *It is important / It's important*
8. I **decided to bought** a new car. *decided to buy*
9. He **wants that I drive**. *wants me to drive*
10. **It's important to me** to find a job. *It's important for me*
11. I called the company **for make** an appointment. *to make an appointment*
12. I **use** to live with my parents. Now I live alone. *used to live*
13. The teacher **expects we do** the homework. *expects us to do*
14. **It's necessary for he** to be on time. *It's necessary for him*
15. I **need to went** to the library last weekend. *needed to go*

This page titled [9.8.5: Error Correction](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

9.8.6: Writing Practices-Write a Letter

Part 1.

Answer each of the following questions. Pay attention to using the correct verb tense and using the correct form of infinitive or gerund.

1. What were you **responsible for doing** as a child?
2. What do you **dislike doing** on the weekends?
3. Have you ever **gone camping**? Where / when?
4. Where do you usually **go shopping** for groceries?
5. Who do you **dream of meeting**? [think of a famous person]
6. What are some things you do **to relax**?
7. Have you ever left home **without locking** the doors?
8. What do you **plan on having** for lunch today?
9. Who did you **want to be** like when you were a kid? [think of a role model]
10. What **have** you **gotten used to eating** since you came to the US?

Part 2. Writing a Letter

Imagine that you have the chance to write a letter to President-Elect Biden [and that he will read it!]. You can ask him to do **ONE** thing. What would you ask him to do? What problem do you want him to focus on? It can be a domestic or an international issue. Why do you think this problem is so important? What do we need to do to solve it? To write an effective letter, follow the steps below:

- Begin your letter with a greeting [Dear Mr. President-Elect / Dear Mr. Biden]
- State exactly why you are writing the letter to him
- Clearly state the specific problem that you want him to focus on
- Explain briefly why this problem is so important / who does it affect and how?
- Explain what you want him to do to solve the problem
- End your letter with a closing statement [sincerely / with gratitude / respectfully] and sign your name

Pay attention to:

- Correct sentence structure
- Using verb tenses appropriately
- Using gerunds & infinitives appropriately when possible
- Using correct punctuation and capitalization

This page titled [9.8.6: Writing Practices-Write a Letter](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

10: Appendices

- [10.1: 100 Common Irregular Verbs](#)
- [10.2: Common Verbs Followed by Gerunds](#)
- [10.3: Common Verbs Followed by Infinitives](#)
- [10.4: List of Common Verb + Prep + Gerund Combinations](#)
- [10.5: Spelling-Adding -s or-es \(Plural Nouns and Simple Present Tense\)](#)
- [10.6: Spelling Rules for Adding -ing and -ed](#)

This page titled [10: Appendices](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

10.1: 100 Common Irregular Verbs

A Hundred of the Most Common Irregular Verbs in English--Corpus-Based-Arranged by Frequency

	Base Form	Past Tense	Past Participle		Base Form	Past Tense	Past Participle
1	say	said	said	26	mean	meant	meant
2	make	made	made	27	set	set	set
3	go	went	gone	28	meet	met	met
4	take	took	taken	29	run	ran	run
5	come	came	come	30	pay	paid	paid
6	see	saw	seen	31	sit	sat	sat
7	know	knew	known	32	speak	spoke	spoken
8	get	got	gotten	33	sweep	swept	swept
9	give	gave	given	34	lead	led	led
10	find	found	found	35	read	read	read
11	think	thought	thought	36	grow	grew	grown
12	tell	told	told	37	lose	lost	lost
13	become	became	become	38	fall	fell	fallen
14	show	showed	shown	39	send	sent	sent
15	leave	left	left	40	build	built	built
16	feel	felt	felt	41	understand	understood	understood
17	put	put	put	42	draw	drew	drawn
18	bring	brought	brought	43	break	broke	broken
19	begin	began	begun	44	spend	spent	spent
20	keep	kept	kept	45	cut	cut	cut
21	hold	held	held	46	rise	rose	risen
22	write	wrote	written	47	drive	drove	driven
23	stand	stood	stood	48	buy	bought	bought
24	hear	heard	heard	49	wear	wore	worn
25	let	let	let	50	choose	chose	chosen

Original Content by Allyson Marceau

The 100 Most Common Irregular Verbs in English--Corpus-Based

	Base Form	Past Tense	Past Participle		Base Form	Past Tense	Past Participle
51	seek	sought	sought	76	cost	cost	cost
52	throw	threw	thrown	77	beat	beat	beaten
53	catch	caught	caught	78	light	lit	lit
54	win	won	won	79	bet	bet	bet
55	forget	forgot	forgotten	80	cast	cast	cast
56	lay	laid	laid	81	hide	hid	hidden
57	sell	sold	sold	82	deal	dealt	dealt
58	fight	fought	fought	83	blow	blew	blown
59	sew	sewed	sewn	84	swim	swam	swum
60	teach	taught	taught	85	bend	bent	bent
61	eat	ate	eaten	86	wake	woke	woken
62	sing	sang	sung	87	stick	stuck	stuck
63	strike	struck	struck	88	fit	fit	fit
64	hang	hung	hung	89	quit	quit	quit
65	shake	shook	shaken	90	shut	shut	shut
66	ride	rode	ridden	91	steal	stole	stolen
67	feed	fed	fed	92	tear	tore	torn
68	shoot	shot	shot	93	hurt	hurt	hurt
69	drink	drank	drunk	94	ring	rang	rung
70	hit	hit	hit	95	spin	spun	spun
71	swing	swung	swung	96	bite	bit	bitten
72	fly	flew	flown	97	overcome	overcame	overcome
73	dig	dug	dug	98	freeze	froze	frozen
74	sleep	slept	slept	99	slide	slid	slid
75	spring	sprang	sprung	100	lend	lent	lent

Original Content by Allyson Marceau

This page titled [10.1: 100 Common Irregular Verbs](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

10.2: Common Verbs Followed by Gerunds

A List of Verbs Complemented by Gerunds

admit He admitted smoking marijuana.	delay They delayed leaving.
advise ³ He advised going to college.	allow ³ They allowed smoking outside.
avoid We avoid asking for help.	begin ¹ He began talking immediately.
can't stand He can't stand waiting.	celebrate He celebrated getting a job.
deny He denied stealing it.	deserve He deserves being in jail.
dislike He dislikes dressing up.	enjoy She enjoys dressing up.
forget ² I forgot turning the light off.	imagine He imagined being free.
love ¹ We love going on vacation.	mention He mentioned having dogs.
neglect ¹ I neglected doing my work.	postpone I postponed having kids.
prevent A polio vaccine prevents getting polio.	prohibit † They prohibit parking here.
regret ¹ I regret not being there.	remember ² I remember hearing it.
risk He risked losing everything.	start ¹ We started taking walks.
support He supported going to war.	tolerate We don't tolerate cheating.

like ¹ I like learning languages.	recommend I recommend staying.
anticipate I anticipate having fun.	appreciate * She appreciates having help.
can't bear I can't bear hearing lies.	can't help I can't help sneezing.
complete He completed reading it.	consider He won't consider helping.
detest She detests exercising.	discuss We discussed going out.
escape He escaped getting married .	finish We finished watching TV.
hate ¹ She hates being alone.	keep We keep trusting him.
mind Do you mind smoking there?	miss I miss being home.
practice I practice playing the piano.	prefer ¹ We prefer eating early.
quit I quit smoking.	recall She recalls being young.
resent * He resents being left alone.	resist I resist eating too much.
stop ² He stopped smoking.	suggest He suggested chewing gum.
try We tried eating snails.	understand I understand getting mad.

¹ complemented by a gerund or an infinitive **without a change in meaning**.

² complemented by a gerund or an infinitive **with a change in meaning**.

³ may be complemented by an **indirect object**: and an **infinitive**. (He advised **us** to go to college.)

* may be complemented by an **indirect object**: and a **gerund**. (She appreciates **you for** helping.) [Gerund Cls w/Subj](#)

May be followed by **that** + a **clause** . [Subjunctive Verbs](#)

Chart from [Grammar Quizzes](#) by [Julie Sevastopoulos](#) licensed for use under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#).

This page titled [10.2: Common Verbs Followed by Gerunds](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

10.3: Common Verbs Followed by Infinitives

List of Common Verbs Followed by Infinitives

VERBS + INFINITIVE	
afford I can afford to buy it.	continue ¹ I continue to work there.
agree I agreed to help her.	decide I can afford to buy it.
appear You appear to be lost.	demand He demanded to know.
arrange I arranged to meet them.	deserve ¹ You deserve to win.
ask I asked to go along.	desire She desires to see you.
attempt ¹ I attempted to explain.	expect I expect to be a little late.
beg I begged to go too.	fail I failed to get an A.
begin ¹ I began to take classes.	forget ² I forgot to call you.
can't bear I can't bear to leave.	hate I hate to miss your show.
can't stand ¹ I can't stand to wait.	hesitate ¹ I hesitate to say anything.
care I don't care to see them.	hope I hope to leave soon.
choose I choose to live here.	intend ¹ I intend to win the game.
claim He claims to be smart.	learn I learned to speak Swahili.
consent He consented to hire them.	hope I hope to see you soon.

MORE VERBS + INFINITIVE	
like ¹ I like to swim.	regret I regret to tell you this.
would like I'd like to go with you.	remember ² I remembered to lock it.
love ¹ I love to dance.	seem He seems to be relaxed.
manage I'll manage to survive.	start ¹ It started to snow.
mean I didn't mean to hurt you.	struggle I struggle to do well.
need I need to ask them.	swear I swear to be true.
neglect ¹ I neglected to do my work.	tend I tend to be on time.
offer I offered to pay for it.	threaten I hope to see you soon.
plan I plan to leave soon.	try ² I try to help often.
prefer ¹ I prefer to pay less.	use ³ I used to play tennis.
pretend I pretend to be confident.	volunteer I volunteered to cook.
prepare I will prepare to leave.	wait I wanted to see the show.
promise I promise to be on time.	want I want to leave now.
refuse I refuse to believe lies.	wish I wish to go to Italy.

¹ This verb can be used before an infinitive or a gerund without a change in meaning (e.g. I began to plan my trip last week. / I began planning my trip last week.)

² See [Meaning differs](#)

³ [used](#) (a former habit) — the tense is limited to past

Also see "[Like](#)" — [Gerund vs. Infinitive – Small Differences in Meaning](#).

Chart from [Grammar Quizzes](#) by [Julie Sevastopoulos](#) licensed for use under [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International](#).

This page titled [10.3: Common Verbs Followed by Infinitives](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

10.4: List of Common Verb + Prep + Gerund Combinations

ABOUT	
agree <i>We agreed about ending the matter. (on)</i>	argue <i>We argued about spending money.</i>
be+adjective <i>I was happy/ concerned/anxious...about starting college.</i>	care <i>We care about recycling things.</i>
complain <i>He complains about getting old.</i>	dream <i>He dreams about playing ball.</i>
forget <i>She forgets about calling us.</i>	talk <i>He talks about getting married.</i>
think <i>We are thinking about joining them.</i>	worry <i>She worried about getting lost.</i>
AGAINST	
decide <i>We decided against buying a car.</i>	warn <i>They warn against giving out information.</i>
AFTER	
go <i>Gary will go after pursuing his dreams</i>	look <i>I will look after buying the tickets.</i>
AT	
good/bad <i>I am good/ bad at learning languages.</i>	excel <i>He excels at playing chess.</i>
laugh <i>We laughed at walking a cat on a leash.</i>	work <i>He worked hard at perfecting his game</i>
FOR	
apologize <i>I apologized for being late.</i>	blame <i>I was blamed for losing the game.</i>
care <i>I don't care for wearing shorts.</i>	stand <i>They won't stand for having such nonsense.</i>
FROM	
keep <i>She tried to keep from seeing him.</i>	refrain <i>She refrained from saying anything.</i>
stop <i>He stopped them from leaving.</i>	suffer <i>He suffers from not having Vitamin C.</i>
IN	
believe <i>She believes in being respectful.</i>	deal <i>He deals in selling real estate.</i>
engage <i>He engages in starting up new businesses.</i>	give <i>He won't give into his complaining. (in/into)</i>
interest <i>He is interested in being a scientist.</i>	participate <i>They will participate in running the race.</i>
result <i>Distraction can result in an accident.</i>	specialize <i>He will specialize in making wine.</i>
succeed <i>He succeeded in winning the race.</i>	

OF	
accuse <i>He was accused of lying.</i>	approve <i>They didn't approve of his staying out late.</i>
dream <i>He dreams of playing football.</i>	in charge <i>He is in charge of collecting tickets.</i>
take care <i>He took care of making reservations</i>	think <i>We thought of getting a new car.</i>
OFF	
call <i>He called off playing the game in the rain</i>	put <i>He put off going to business school.</i>
ON	
agree <i>We agreed on renting the condominium.</i>	concentrate <i>He is concentrating on getting experience.</i>
congratulate <i>We congratulated them on winning.</i>	depend <i>We depend on getting help from the government.</i>
go <i>Will you go on working?</i>	insist <i>He insists on coming too.</i>
intend <i>They intend on waging war.</i>	keep <i>We keep on working.</i>
plan <i>She plans on taking a course.</i>	rely <i>We rely on their assisting us.</i>
TO	
adjust <i>I have adjusted to living in the U.S.</i>	agree <i>They agreed to leaving earlier.</i>
devote <i>A dog is devoted to working on your behalf.</i>	get used/ be used <i>We are/ got used to hearing traffic.</i>
look forward <i>I look forward to seeing you.</i>	object <i>I object to doing all the work.</i>
WITH	
agree <i>He agrees with exercising daily.</i>	charge <i>They charged him with embezzling.</i>
struggle <i>They don't want to struggle with moving.</i>	trust <i>I wouldn't trust them with doing this correctly.</i>

(Huddleston 7 §6.2) (Swan 416 449)

💡 Pop-Q "[Dream of](#)" | "[Use to](#)" | "[Look forward](#)" | "[Confine to](#)" **Other Lists:** [Verb + Prep](#) (List) | [Adjective + Prep Phrase](#) (List) | [Participle Modifier & Preposition](#) (List) | [Noun + Prep Phrase](#)

This page titled [10.4: List of Common Verb + Prep + Gerund Combinations](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

10.5: Spelling-Adding -s or-es (Plural Nouns and Simple Present Tense)

Spelling: Adding -s and -es

We add -s and -es for two reasons:

1. The word is a noun, and we make it plural.

✓ Examples

table → tables

chair → chairs

2. The word is a verb, and it agrees with the subject (he, she, or it—3rd person singular)

✓ Examples

I wait → she waits

they cook → he cooks

Rule 1:

If a word ends in /s/, /z/, /ch/, /sh/ or /x/ sound → add -es

Only add -es for the *he/she/it* form of the verb (third person singular).

✓ Examples 10.5.1

watch → watches

wash → washes

kiss → kisses

I pass out papers. → She passes out papers.

I wash the dishes. → He washes the dishes.

Rule 2:

If a word ends in a consonant plus -y, change -y to i and add -es. If the word ends in a vowel plus -y, just add -s.

✓ Examples

Consonant + -y

Change -y to i and add -es

cry → cries

study → studies

Vowel + -y

Add -s

pay → pays

buy → buys

Rule 3:

After the letter *o*.

We add the plural suffix *-es* to most words that end in *o*.

- tomato → tomatoes
- hero → heroes

We add the plural suffix *-s* to words of foreign origin (Latin, Greek, Spanish, etc.)

- piano → pianos
- photo → photos
- video → videos

This page titled [10.5: Spelling-Adding -s or-es \(Plural Nouns and Simple Present Tense\)](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

10.6: Spelling Rules for Adding -ing and -ed

Spelling Rules for Adding -ing

Rule	Examples
Most verbs: Add -ing	Read--reading Talk--talking Say--saying
Verbs that end in -y: Add -ing	Study--studying Carry--carrying Play--playing
Verbs that end in -e: Drop the -e and add -ing	Wake--waking Make--making Tape--taping
Verbs that end in -ie: Change the ie to y	Die--dying Lie--lying
Verbs that end in CVC (consonant, vowel, consonant), one-syllable: Double the last letter	Stop--stopping Sit--sitting Ban--banning
Verbs that end in CVC, two-syllable: If the stress is on the last syllable, double the last letter.	Begin--beginning Refer--referring OR Listen--listening Cancel--canceling

Table 4 -ing Spelling Rules

From *Intermediate Academic Grammar for ESL Students* licensed by [Rebecca Al Haider](#) under [CC BY 4.0](#)

Spelling Rules for Regular Past Tense Verbs

Base Form Ending	Rule	Example
-e	Add -d	dance → danced, like → liked
Consonant + y	Change -y to -i and add -ed	carry → carried, study → studied
Consonant	Add -ed	talk → talked, jump → jumped
Vowel + consonant (except y)	Add -ed	play → played, boil → boiled

Chart created in ChatGPT

This page titled [10.6: Spelling Rules for Adding -ing and -ed](#) is shared under a [CC BY-SA](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Allyson Marceau](#).

Detailed Licensing

Overview

Title: ESOL Advanced Grammar

Webpages: 104

All licenses found:

- [CC BY-SA 4.0](#): 99% (103 pages)
- [Undeclared](#): 1% (1 page)

By Page

- [ESOL Advanced Grammar](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [Front Matter](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [TitlePage](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [InfoPage](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [Table of Contents](#) - [Undeclared](#)
 - [Licensing](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [1: Present Past and Future Tenses](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [1.1: The Present](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [1.1.1: Practice with Present Tenses](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [1.1.2: Subject-Verb Agreement](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [1.2: Simple Past and Past Progressive-Usage and Practice](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [1.3: Practice with Simple Past and Past Progressive](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [1.4: The Future](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [1.4.1: Practice with Future Time](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [2: Perfect Tenses](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [2.1: Present Perfect Tense](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [2.2: Present Perfect Tense with Time Expressions](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [2.3: Simple Past vs Present Perfect](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [2.4: Present Perfect Progressive](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [2.5: Past Perfect](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [2.6: Past Perfect Progressive \(Continuous\) Tense](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [2.7: Past Perfect vs Past Perfect Progressive](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [3: Modals](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [3.1: Modal Verbs Expressing Degrees of Certainty](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [3.2: Past Modals of Degrees of Certainty](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [3.3: Should Have](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [3.4: Comparing Could Have and Should Have](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [3.5: Progressive Modals](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [4: Passive](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [4.1: Passive-Form and Usage](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [4.1.1: Practice with Passive](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [4.1.2: Passive Voice Exercises-Variou Tenses](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [4.1.3: Passive Exercises- Modal Verbs](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5: Connectors- Adverbials, Adverb Clauses and Phrases](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.1: Introduction to Phrases and Clauses](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.1.1: Clause Joining and Punctuation](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.1.2: Working with Language- Complex Sentences](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.2: Comparison and Contrast](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.3: Connectors of Purpose Reason and Result](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.4: Connectors-Addition](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.4.1: Practice-Addition](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [6: Real and Unreal Conditional](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [6.1: Chapter 6- Conditional/Hypothetical](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [6.1.1: Present Unreal \(Second\) Conditional](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [6.1.1.1: The "Be" Verb in Present Unreal Conditional](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [6.1.2: More Practice with Present Unreal \(Second\) Conditional](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [6.1.3: Past Unreal \(Third\) Conditional](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)

- 6.1.4: Practice with Past Unreal (Third) Conditional - CC BY-SA 4.0
- 6.1.5: Mixed Conditionals - CC BY-SA 4.0
- 6.1.6: Conditionals-Review - CC BY-SA 4.0
- 7: Adjective Clauses - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 7.1: Introduction to Adjective Clauses/Defining and Non-Defining Adjective Clauses - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 7.2: Subject and Object Relative (Adjective) Clauses - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 7.3: Reducing Adjective Clauses - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 7.4: Adjective Clauses with Whose - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 7.5: Common Errors with Adjective Clauses - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 7.6: Adjective Clauses with When and Where - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 7.7: Practice with When and Where Adjective Clauses - CC BY-SA 4.0
- 8: Noun Clauses - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 8.1: Introduction to Noun Clauses - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 8.2: 7.2-Practice with "That" Noun Clauses - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 8.3: Embedded Questions-Wh-Clauses - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 8.4: Reported Yes/No Questions with If and Whether - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 8.4.1: Practice with Reported Yes/No Questions - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 8.5: Direct and Indirect Speech - CC BY-SA 4.0
- 9: Gerunds and Infinitives - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.1: Introduction to-Gerunds and Infinitives- Reading - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.2: Gerunds Introduced - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.3: Gerunds Practice - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.3.1: Gerund as Subject - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.3.2: Gerunds - Questions - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.3.3: Verb + Gerund - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.3.4: Adjective+Preposition+Gerund - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.3.5: Gerunds - Find Someone Who - Questions - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.3.6: Gerunds in Go Expressions - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.3.7: Gerunds - Review - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.4: Gerund Rules - Review - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.5: Gerunds-Form and Usage - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.6: Infinitives-Form and Usage - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.6.1: Infinitives After Objects or Object Pronouns - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.6.2: Infinitives To Show Purpose - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.7: Infinitives Practice-"It is.." - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.7.1: Infinitives Review - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.7.2: Infinitives – Writing - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.7.3: Infinitives – More Questions - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.8: Practice-Gerunds and Infinitives - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.8.1: Gerunds + Infinitives Review - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.8.2: Gerunds + Infinitives Exercises - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.8.3: Gerunds and Infinitives - Speaking Practice - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.8.4: Wedding Interview and Writing - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.8.5: Error Correction - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.8.6: Writing Practices-Write a Letter - CC BY-SA 4.0
- 10: Appendices - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 10.1: 100 Common Irregular Verbs - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 10.2: Common Verbs Followed by Gerunds - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 10.3: Common Verbs Followed by Infinitives - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 10.4: List of Common Verb + Prep + Gerund Combinations - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 10.5: Spelling-Adding -s or-es (Plural Nouns and Simple Present Tense) - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 10.6: Spelling Rules for Adding -ing and -ed - CC BY-SA 4.0
- Back Matter - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - Index - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - Glossary - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - Detailed Licensing - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - Detailed Licensing - CC BY-SA 4.0

Detailed Licensing

Overview

Title: ESOL Advanced Grammar

Webpages: 104

All licenses found:

- [CC BY-SA 4.0](#): 99% (103 pages)
- [Undeclared](#): 1% (1 page)

By Page

- [ESOL Advanced Grammar](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [Front Matter](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [TitlePage](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [InfoPage](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [Table of Contents](#) - [Undeclared](#)
 - [Licensing](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [1: Present Past and Future Tenses](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [1.1: The Present](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [1.1.1: Practice with Present Tenses](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [1.1.2: Subject-Verb Agreement](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [1.2: Simple Past and Past Progressive-Usage and Practice](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [1.3: Practice with Simple Past and Past Progressive](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [1.4: The Future](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [1.4.1: Practice with Future Time](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [2: Perfect Tenses](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [2.1: Present Perfect Tense](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [2.2: Present Perfect Tense with Time Expressions](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [2.3: Simple Past vs Present Perfect](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [2.4: Present Perfect Progressive](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [2.5: Past Perfect](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [2.6: Past Perfect Progressive \(Continuous\) Tense](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [2.7: Past Perfect vs Past Perfect Progressive](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [3: Modals](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [3.1: Modal Verbs Expressing Degrees of Certainty](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [3.2: Past Modals of Degrees of Certainty](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [3.3: Should Have](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [3.4: Comparing Could Have and Should Have](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [3.5: Progressive Modals](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [4: Passive](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [4.1: Passive-Form and Usage](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [4.1.1: Practice with Passive](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [4.1.2: Passive Voice Exercises-Variou Tenses](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [4.1.3: Passive Exercises- Modal Verbs](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5: Connectors- Adverbials, Adverb Clauses and Phrases](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.1: Introduction to Phrases and Clauses](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.1.1: Clause Joining and Punctuation](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.1.2: Working with Language- Complex Sentences](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.2: Comparison and Contrast](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.3: Connectors of Purpose Reason and Result](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.4: Connectors-Addition](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.4.1: Practice-Addition](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [6: Real and Unreal Conditional](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [6.1: Chapter 6- Conditional/Hypothetical](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [6.1.1: Present Unreal \(Second\) Conditional](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [6.1.1.1: The "Be" Verb in Present Unreal Conditional](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [6.1.2: More Practice with Present Unreal \(Second\) Conditional](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)
 - [6.1.3: Past Unreal \(Third\) Conditional](#) - [CC BY-SA 4.0](#)

- 6.1.4: Practice with Past Unreal (Third) Conditional - CC BY-SA 4.0
- 6.1.5: Mixed Conditionals - CC BY-SA 4.0
- 6.1.6: Conditionals-Review - CC BY-SA 4.0
- 7: Adjective Clauses - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 7.1: Introduction to Adjective Clauses/Defining and Non-Defining Adjective Clauses - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 7.2: Subject and Object Relative (Adjective) Clauses - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 7.3: Reducing Adjective Clauses - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 7.4: Adjective Clauses with Whose - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 7.5: Common Errors with Adjective Clauses - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 7.6: Adjective Clauses with When and Where - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 7.7: Practice with When and Where Adjective Clauses - CC BY-SA 4.0
- 8: Noun Clauses - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 8.1: Introduction to Noun Clauses - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 8.2: 7.2-Practice with "That" Noun Clauses - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 8.3: Embedded Questions-Wh-Clauses - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 8.4: Reported Yes/No Questions with If and Whether - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 8.4.1: Practice with Reported Yes/No Questions - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 8.5: Direct and Indirect Speech - CC BY-SA 4.0
- 9: Gerunds and Infinitives - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.1: Introduction to-Gerunds and Infinitives- Reading - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.2: Gerunds Introduced - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.3: Gerunds Practice - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.3.1: Gerund as Subject - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.3.2: Gerunds - Questions - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.3.3: Verb + Gerund - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.3.4: Adjective+Preposition+Gerund - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.3.5: Gerunds - Find Someone Who - Questions - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.3.6: Gerunds in Go Expressions - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.3.7: Gerunds - Review - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.4: Gerund Rules - Review - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.5: Gerunds-Form and Usage - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.6: Infinitives-Form and Usage - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.6.1: Infinitives After Objects or Object Pronouns - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.6.2: Infinitives To Show Purpose - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.7: Infinitives Practice-"It is.." - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.7.1: Infinitives Review - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.7.2: Infinitives – Writing - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.7.3: Infinitives – More Questions - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.8: Practice-Gerunds and Infinitives - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.8.1: Gerunds + Infinitives Review - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.8.2: Gerunds + Infinitives Exercises - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.8.3: Gerunds and Infinitives - Speaking Practice - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.8.4: Wedding Interview and Writing - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.8.5: Error Correction - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 9.8.6: Writing Practices-Write a Letter - CC BY-SA 4.0
- 10: Appendices - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 10.1: 100 Common Irregular Verbs - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 10.2: Common Verbs Followed by Gerunds - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 10.3: Common Verbs Followed by Infinitives - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 10.4: List of Common Verb + Prep + Gerund Combinations - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 10.5: Spelling-Adding -s or-es (Plural Nouns and Simple Present Tense) - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - 10.6: Spelling Rules for Adding -ing and -ed - CC BY-SA 4.0
- Back Matter - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - Index - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - Glossary - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - Detailed Licensing - CC BY-SA 4.0
 - Detailed Licensing - CC BY-SA 4.0